

Eastern Arabic with MP3 Files

Frank A. Rice
Majed F. Sa'id

Georgetown University Press
Washington, D.C.

Contents

Jerusalem Arabic appeared first in mimeographed form in 1953 under the auspices of the Georgetown University Institute of Languages and Linguistics. It was later revised and published as *Eastern Arabic* (1960). This volume is a reprint of the 1960 edition.

Georgetown University Press, Washington, D.C.
© 2005 by Georgetown University Press. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 2005

This book is printed on acid-free paper meeting
the requirements of the American National Standard
for Permanence in Paper for Printed Library Materials.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Rice, Frank A.
Eastern Arabic with MP3 files / Frank A. Rice, Majed F. Sa'id.
p. cm.—(Georgetown classics in Arabic language and linguistics)
English and Arabic.
Originally published: Washington, DC : Georgetown University Press, 1979. (The Richard
Slade Harrell Arabic series). With MP3 files.
ISBN 1-58901-052-3 (pbk. : alk. paper)
I. Arabic language—Dialects—Syria. I. Sa'id, Majed F., 1927- II. Title. III. Series.
PJ6813R554 2005
492.77'095691—dc22 2004061777

Contents of the MP3 Files	xiii
Arabic Research at Georgetown University	xix
Foreword to the Georgetown Classics Edition	xxi
Preface	xxiii
Introduction	xxv
The Sounds of Arabic	xxx
Pronunciation Practices	xxxv

Unit

1	Greetings and courtesy expressions	1
2	Directions; Numbers 1–10	7
3	Arrival; Numbers 11–20	15
4	Getting around; Numbers 20–100 by tens	25
5	Requests and information; Numbers 21–29	32
6	Where is it? Numbers 100–1,000 by hundreds	43
7	Introductions	51
8	Family and children	62
9	Where have you been?	71
10	In a coffee shop	79
11	Telling time	86
12	Eating out	97
13	Buying some cloth	105
14	At the tailor's	117
15	Speaking Arabic	132

Unit		
16	Buying fruits and vegetables	140
17	Invalids	148
18	A political figure	158
19	Friends. Higher numbers	167
20	A radio station—I	177
21	A radio station—II	190
22	Filling out applications	201
23	Goods and services	213
24	From New York to Beirut	223
25	The program of the new cabinet—I	232
26	The program of the new cabinet—II	238
27	Telephone conversations	242
28	A Juha story	247
29	A village	255
30	Going home	263
Vocabulary 1	Arabic–English	267
Vocabulary 2	English–Arabic	337

Grammar

For ease of reference, the grammar sections are separately listed below. The first number refers to the unit, the second number to the section.

Unit		
1.1	General	4
1.2	Word stress	4
1.3	Vowel prominence	5
1.4	Sentences without verbs	5
1.5	Independent pronouns	5
2.1	The transition vowel	11
2.2	Pronoun endings—I	12
3.1	Intonation	21
3.2	Pronoun endings—II	22
3.3	Negation	22
3.4	The word <i>nšaalla</i>	23
4.1	Variants of the pronoun endings	29
4.2	Summary of the pronoun endings	29
4.3	The word <i>bidd-</i>	30
4.4	The word <i>fii</i>	30
5.1	The prefix for “the”	38
5.2	Command forms of verbs	38
5.3	Nouns	39
5.4	Definite and indefinite nouns	39
5.5	Adjectives	39
5.6	Noun-adjective agreement	40
5.7	The feminine ending -e/-a	40
6.1	Verbs	47

Unit		Unit	
	47	13.3	Suffix tense verb classes—I
6.2	The prefix tense—I		111
	48	14.1	Noun annexion
6.3	Demonstratives		123
	56	14.2	Suffix tense verb classes—II
7.1	The prefix tense—II		124
	57	14.3	Prefix tense of 'axad and 'akal
7.2	Prefix tense stems ending in a vowel		127
	57	15.1	Negative commands
7.3	Stem vowels		135
	58	15.2	Place nouns
7.4	The suffix tense		135
	58	16.1	Collective nouns
7.5	The verb prefix rah-		145
	59	17.1	The nisbe
7.6	The verb 'aja		152
	66	18.1	Ordinal numbers
8.1	Counting		163
	66	19.1	Compound numbers
8.2	The word kam		173
	66	19.2	Agreement
8.3	The dual		173
	67	20.1	Relative sentences
8.4	Formation of commands		182
	74	20.2	Simple and complex verbs
9.1	Feminine T-nouns		183
	74	20.3	Verbs of Form I
9.2	The word 9ind		185
	75	20.4	Verbs of Form II
9.3	Assimilation		186
	82	20.5	Verbs of Form III
10.1	Ordering things		194
	82	21.1	The comparative
10.2	The preposition fii		196
	82	21.2	Verbs of Form IV
10.3	Roots and patterns		197
	83	21.3	Verbs of Form V
10.4	Vowel harmony		198
	89	21.4	Verbs of Form VI
11.1	The preposition 9ala		207
	89	22.1	Connective maa
11.2	Types of roots		208
	91	22.2	Verbs of Form VII
11.3	Noun and adjective plurals		209
	94	22.3	Verbs of Form VIII
11.4	Velarization by assimilation		210
	101	22.4	Verbs of Form IX
12.1	Verb phrases		210
	101	22.5	Verbs of Form X
12.2	Types of patterns		211
	110	22.6	Summary of the verb
13.1	The suffix -l-		218
	111	23.1	Participles
13.2	The particle yyaa-		

Unit		
23.2	The active participle	218
24.1	The passive participle	227
25.1	Verbal nouns	235
25.2	Verbal nouns of simple verbs	236
25.3	Verbal nouns of complex verbs: Form II	236
26.1	Verbal nouns of complex verbs: Forms III–X	241

Contents of the MP3 Files

A CD containing MP3 files accompanies *Eastern Arabic*. MP3 files can be played on computers with a CD-ROM drive, on MP3-compatible portable CD players, and on MP3-compatible CD/DVD players. The files can also be copied onto portable MP3 players and onto MP3-enabled handheld devices. These MP3 files were remastered from the original audiocassettes, and their sound quality reflects the technology of the originals.

Page	Unit	Drill	Time
xxxv	0	Pronunciation Practices 1	0:52
xxxv	0	Pronunciation Practices 2	0:49
xxxvi	0	Pronunciation Practices 3	0:57
xxxvi	0	Pronunciation Practices 4	0:38
xxxvi	0	Pronunciation Practices 5	0:31
xxxvi	0	Pronunciation Practices 6	1:23
xxxvii	0	Pronunciation Practices 7	0:51
xxxvii	0	Pronunciation Practices 8	1:14
xxxviii	0	Pronunciation Practices 9	0:55
xxxviii	0	Pronunciation Practices 10	1:53
xxxviii	0	Pronunciation Practices 11	1:38
1–2	1	Pattern Sentences	5:42
2–3	1	Structure Sentences 1. Feminine Forms	2:25
3	1	Structure Sentences 2. Plural Forms	2:22
3–4	1	Structure Sentences 3. Independent Pronouns	1:23
7–8	2	Pattern Sentences	6:58
8–9	2	Additional Expressions	3:27
9–10	2	Structure Sentences 1. Feminine Forms	3:26
10–11	2	Structure Sentences 2. Plural Forms	4:11
15–17	3	Pattern Sentences	6:00
17–18	3	Structure Sentences 1. Feminine Forms (said to a woman)	1:04

<u>Page</u>	<u>Unit</u>	<u>Drill</u>	<u>Time</u>
18	3	Structure Sentences 2. Plural Forms (said to a group)	1:03
18–19	3	Structure Sentences 3. Plural Forms (said by or for a group)	1:29
19	3	Structure Sentences 4. Masculine Forms (said about a man)	1:34
19–20	3	Structure Sentences 5. Feminine Forms (said about a woman)	1:21
20	3	Structure Sentences 6. Plural Forms (said about a group)	1:27
25–26	4	Pattern Sentences	4:33
26–27	4	Structure Sentences 1. Feminine Forms (said to a woman)	0:52
27	4	Structure Sentences 2. Plural Forms (said to a group)	0:55
27–28	4	Structure Sentences 3. Plural Forms (said by or for a group)	0:45
28	4	Structure Sentences 4. Masculine Forms (said about a man)	0:48
28	4	Structure Sentences 5. Feminine Forms (said about a woman)	0:49
28–29	4	Structure Sentences 6. Plural Forms (said about a group)	0:55
32–33	5	Pattern Sentences	2:41
33	5	Additional Vocabulary 1. Masculine Nouns	1:57
33–34	5	Additional Vocabulary 2. Feminine Nouns	3:31
34–35	5	Structure Sentences 1. The Prefix for “the”	4:34
35–36	5	Structure Sentences 2. Commands (said to a man)	2:11
36	5	Structure Sentences 3. Commands (said to a woman)	1:43
36	5	Structure Sentences 4. Commands (said to a group)	1:57
37	5	Structure Sentences 5. Adjectives (masculine forms)	1:19

<u>Page</u>	<u>Unit</u>	<u>Drill</u>	<u>Time</u>
37	5	Structure Sentences 6. Adjectives (feminine forms)	1:14
37	5	Structure Sentences 7. Adjectives (plural forms)	0:27
43–44	6	Pattern Sentences	2:59
45	6	Structure Sentences 1. Prepositions	0:36
45–46	6	Structure Sentences 2. Prefix Tense Verbs: Simple Prefix	1:24
46	6	Structure Sentences 3. Prefix Tense Verbs: <i>B</i> -prefix	0:57
51–52	7	Pattern Sentences	3:37
52–53	7	Additional Vocabulary	1:38
53	7	Structure Sentences 1. Prefix Tense Verbs: Simple Prefix	2:04
53–54	7	Structure Sentences 2. Prefix Tense Verbs: <i>B</i> -prefix	1:39
54	7	Structure Sentences 3. Prefix Tense Stems Ending in a Vowel	1:21
54–55	7	Structure Sentences 4. (no audio file)	—
55–56	7	Structure Sentences 5. Suffix Tense Verbs	3:20
62–63	8	Pattern Sentences	3:34
63–64	8	Alternate Expressions	3:04
64	8	Structure Sentences 1. Counting: 11–20	0:57
64–65	8	Structure Sentences 2. Singular and Dual of Nouns	1:42
71–72	9	Pattern Sentences	2:33
72	9	Alternate Expressions	0:51
72–73	9	Alternate Vocabulary	0:57
73	9	Structure Sentences 1. Feminine <i>T</i> -nouns: Free Forms and Combining Forms	2:53
74	9	Structure Sentences 2. The Word <i>9ind</i>	1:23
79–80	10	Pattern Sentences	2:45
80	10	Alternate Expressions	1:05
80	10	Additional Vocabulary	0:20

Page	Unit	Drill	Time
81	10	Structure Sentences 1. Ordering Things	1:07
81	10	Structure Sentences 2. The Preposition <i>fi</i>	1:55
86-87	11	Pattern Sentences	2:50
87	11	Alternate Expressions	0:38
87	11	Additional Vocabulary	0:31
87-88	11	Structure Sentences 1. Time Expressions	3:00
88-89	11	Structure Sentences 2. The Preposition <i>9ala</i>	2:38
97-99	12	Pattern Sentences	6:39
99-100	12	Additional Vocabulary	1:18
100	12	Structure Sentences 1. Verb Phrases	1:36
105-7	13	Pattern Sentences	5:33
107-8	13	Additional Vocabulary 1. Articles of Clothing	1:21
108	13	Additional Vocabulary 2. Kinds of Cloth	0:17
108	13	Additional Vocabulary 3. Measures	0:24
108	13	Additional Vocabulary 4. Seasons	0:22
109	13	Structure Sentences 1. The Suffix <i>-l</i>	1:36
110	13	Structure Sentences 2. The Particle <i>yyaa</i>	1:18
117-20	14	Pattern Sentences	9:40
120	14	Additional Vocabulary 1. Days of the Week	0:32
121	14	Additional Vocabulary 2. Color Adjectives	1:34
121	14	Additional Vocabulary 3. Sewing Needs	0:39
121-23	14	Structure Sentences 1. Noun Annexion	2:58
132-33	15	Pattern Sentences	5:30
134	15	Additional Vocabulary	2:02
134-35	15	Structure Sentences 1. Negative Commands	2:05
140-41	16	Pattern Sentences	6:14
141-42	16	Additional Vocabulary 1. Vegetables	3:33
142-43	16	Additional Vocabulary 2. Fruits	1:40
143	16	Additional Vocabulary 3. Meat and Fish	1:21
143	16	Structure Sentences 1. Collective Nouns	1:32
144	16	Structure Sentences 2. Unit Nouns	2:20
144	16	Structure Sentences 3. Unit Expressions	1:07
148-50	17	Pattern Sentences	7:34
150-51	17	Additional Vocabulary	1:46
151-52	17	Structure Sentences	
		1. Nisbe Adjectives and Nouns	3:31

Page	Unit	Drill	Time
158-61	18	Pattern Sentences	8:40
161-62	18	Additional Vocabulary	3:11
162-63	18	Structure Sentences 1. Ordinal Numbers	1:55
167-70	19	Pattern Sentences	10:20
170-71	19	Additional Vocabulary	2:04
171-72	19	Structure Sentences 1. Strict Agreement	3:49
172	19	Structure Sentences 2. Deflected Agreement	2:10
177-79	20	Pattern Sentences	7:27
179-80	20	Structure Sentences	
		1. Relative Sentences with <i>(i)lli</i>	1:58
181	20	Structure Sentences	
		2. Relative Sentences without <i>(i)lli</i>	1:32
182	20	Structure Sentences	
		3. The Word <i>(i)lli</i> as a Pronoun	0:58
190-92	21	Pattern Sentences	7:15
193-94	21	Structure Sentences 1. The Comparative	4:04
194	21	Structure Sentences	
		2. The Comparative after <i>maa</i>	0:25
201-5	22	Pattern Sentences	10:53
205	22	Additional Vocabulary	
		1. Months of the Year	2:11
206	22	Additional Vocabulary	
		2. Occupations and Professions	1:02
206-7	22	Structure Sentences 1. Connective <i>maa</i>	3:15
213	23	Pattern Sentences 1. At the Hotel	0:41
213-14	23	Pattern Sentences 2. With the Maid	2:36
214-15	23	Pattern Sentences 3. At the Barber's	2:21
215-16	23	Pattern Sentences 4. At the Presser's	2:25
216-17	23	Pattern Sentences 5. At the Post Office	1:30
217	23	Structure Sentences	
		1. Active Participles of Simple Verbs	2:30
217-18	23	Structure Sentences	
		2. Active Participles of Complex Verbs	2:25
223-26	24	Pattern Sentences	10:00
226	24	Structure Sentences	
		1. Passive Participles of Simple Verbs	2:36

<u>Page</u>	<u>Unit</u>	<u>Drill</u>	<u>Time</u>
226–27	24	Structure Sentences	1:21
		2. Passive Participles of Complex Verbs	6:08
232–34	25	Pattern Sentences	
234–35	25	Structure Sentences	1:34
		1. Verbal Nouns: Form I Verbs	
235	25	Structure Sentences	1:58
		2. Verbal Nouns: Form II Verbs	5:15
238–40	26	Pattern Sentences	
240	26	Structure Sentences	1:01
		1. Verbal Nouns: Form III Verbs	
240	26	Structure Sentences	1:02
		2. Verbal Nouns: Form IV Verbs	
240	26	Structure Sentences	0:33
		3. Verbal Nouns: Form V Verbs	
240	26	Structure Sentences	1:00
		4. Verbal Nouns: Form VI Verbs	
242–43	27	Pattern Sentences	5:31
		1. B: Mr. Batte; H: Mr. Haddad; M: Maid	
243–44	27	Pattern Sentences	0:51
		2. K: Mr. Key; M: Maid	
244–45	27	Pattern Sentences	5:15
		3. B: Mr. Black; K: Khalil; O: Operator; M: Maid	
245–46	27	Pattern Sentences	2:44
		4. O: Mr. Oakes; S: Secretary	
246	27	Pattern Sentences	1:28
		5. B: Mr. Batte; S: Secretary	20:11
247–53	28	Pattern Sentences	3:53
247–53	28	Pattern Sentences Read at Normal Speed	2:03
255	29	Pattern Sentences 1. An Invitation	4:08
255–56	29	Pattern Sentences 2. In the Village	9:37
257–59	29	Pattern Sentences 3. The Headman	—
260–62	29	Additional Vocabulary 1–3 (no audio files)	9:32
263–65	30	Pattern Sentences	
		Total:	5:33:02

Arabic Research at Georgetown University

In the past forty years, the world of research in Arabic theoretical linguistics has expanded but the production of professional quality textbooks in colloquial Arabic has remained limited. Despite the passage of years, the Richard Slade Harrell Arabic series has consistently been in demand from Georgetown University Press because of the quality of research that went into its composition, the solid theoretical foundations for its methodology, and the comprehensive coverage of regional Arabic speech communities.

The Department of Arabic Language, Literature, and Linguistics at Georgetown University (formerly Arabic Department) recognizes the need to sustain the tradition of research and publication in Arabic dialects and has continued dialectology field research and textbook production, most notably with Margaret (Omar) Nydell's *Syrian Arabic Video Course*, a three-year research project funded by Center for the Advancement of Language Learning from 1991 to 1994. Currently we are engaged in a four-year dialectology research project aimed at producing "conversion" courses to assist learners of Modern Standard Arabic in converting their knowledge and skills of written Arabic to proficiency in selected Arabic dialects. This project is part of a grant administered by the National Capital Language Resource Center under the directorship of Dr. James E. Alatis and Dr. Anna Chamot.

We pay tribute to the tradition initiated and led by Richard Harrell, the founder of this series, and of the original Arabic Research Program at Georgetown University. His scholarship and creative energy set a standard in the field and yielded an unprecedented and as yet unsurpassed series of, as he put it, "practical tools for the increasing number of Americans whose lives bring them into contact with the Arab world." We hope that this series of reprints and our continuing efforts in applied Arabic dialectology research will yield a new crop of linguistic resources for Arabic language study.

Karin C. Ryding
Sultan Qaboos bin Said Professor of Arabic

Foreword to the Georgetown Classics Edition

Eastern Arabic has been republished in order to provide an accessible text for the study of spoken Levantine Arabic, which includes the Lebanese, Syrian, and Palestinian dialects and primarily is the Jerusalem dialect. Until a complete, up-to-date text is written for Palestinian Arabic, this is one of the few resources we have that can be used to learn this dialect. Written in transcription using the Roman alphabet, this book can be used by those without any previous knowledge of the Arabic language or script.

Palestinian Arabic has not been formally described and learning or reference materials have not been written for fifty years unlike many other dialects, notably Syrian and Egyptian, which are well documented. Access is difficult and research funds are hard to come by. The dialect(s) of Palestine undoubtedly have changed, particularly in terms of vocabulary, since the first publication of *Eastern Arabic*, making it important that this text be supplemented by a teacher. Latin transcription could also be copied out in Arabic script, a format that has come into wide use only in the last twenty years.

There will be a steady, probably increasing, demand for Palestinian Arabic, particularly if the region becomes stabilized and opens up economically and politically. The dialect in this book is a central Middle Eastern dialect now widely recognized by Arabs virtually everywhere due, in large part, to the Palestinian diaspora. The Palestinian dialect is a good choice for a foreigner who needs a base dialect, as it can be spoken throughout the Arab world, even when the host country dialect is unfamiliar.

Eastern Arabic provides a basic, structured introduction to the essential features and vocabulary of spoken Palestinian Arabic. This text is a good tool for acquiring an introductory-level familiarity with the dialects of Jerusalem and the wider Levantine region.

Margaret Nydell

Preface

This book is an introduction to the Arabic spoken by Palestinian, Syrian, and Lebanese Arabs.

The Arabic presented and described is the language of everyday conversation, and may be regarded as typical of the speech of the educated city dweller.

This book was first issued in 1953 in mimeographed form under the title *Jerusalem Arabic*. As a result of experience gained through extensive classroom use in the Institute of Languages and Linguistics of Georgetown University and in the Foreign Service Institute of the Department of State, the need for certain changes became apparent, and we have incorporated most of these in the book as it now appears.

The Arabic material represents primarily the speech of the second author, but also incorporates usages suggested by other native speakers of Arabic who have used the book in their classes. We are particularly grateful in this regard to Mr. Moukhtar Ani, Mr. Sirri Kaltakji, and Mr. Bourhan Chatti for their constructive criticism and comment.

Our greatest linguistic debt is to Dr. Charles A. Ferguson of Harvard University for his constant help and encouragement while the book was being written.

Finally, we wish to express our gratitude to Dr. Leon E. Dostert, Director of the Institute of Languages and Linguistics of Georgetown University, without whose whole-hearted cooperation the text could never have been produced.

Frank A. Rice

Majed F. Sa'id

Beirut, January 1958

Introduction

I. The Arabic language

The Arabic language is spoken today throughout an area that lies partly in southwest Asia and partly in Africa. The eastern boundary of this region is the Zagros Mountains, dividing Iraq from Iran; the western boundary is the Atlantic ocean off the coast of Morocco. In the north the boundary is the Taurus range, dividing Turkey from the Fertile Crescent (Syria and Iraq), and in the south the Indian Ocean, the African jungle, and the Sahara Desert. Outside this region, the spread of Islam carried the language east into Central Asia and south into Africa; and there are substantial groups of emigrants among whom Arabic is spoken in North and South America, especially in the United States, Brazil, and Argentina.

Though Arabic is the everyday speech of most of the inhabitants of the region described above, it would be a mistake to assume that they all speak the same kind of Arabic. Arabic has shared the fate of all languages that are spread out over a large area for a long period of time. It has developed a wide variety of dialects, some of them being so different from one another that they might almost be considered separate languages. The mutual intelligibility of different dialects depends, as in the case of other languages, upon the dialects themselves and upon the educational background and cultural bias of the speakers.

Apart from spoken Arabic, with its many dialects, there is the literary language, frequently called Classical Arabic. This is basically the language of the Koran and early literature.

Classical Arabic is the accepted standard for all written material, but is not used as a language of everyday conversation. As a spoken language it is confined to certain socially prescribed occasions, such as on the radio and in public addresses.

It is necessary to understand that no Arab grows up speaking Classical Arabic. Each Arab grows up speaking a modern dialect and learns the Classical — if he learns it at all — in school. Because of the general low level of education in the Arab world, a command of the Classical language is the possession of a limited number of people.

Classical Arabic enjoys the respect and veneration of all Arabs, in contrast to their attitude toward the modern dialects, which are usually regarded as corruptions of the literary language. Nonetheless, in an effort to salvage some prestige for modern Arabic, each Arab likes to believe that his own native dialect, with all its alleged corruptness, is closer to the Classical (and hence « purer ») than any dialect spoken elsewhere.

2. The transcription

Arabic is normally written and printed in a writing system called the Arabic alphabet. However, in this book all the Arabic material is presented in a special writing system called a **transcription**. The transcription is better suited to represent the sounds and forms of modern spoken Arabic than is the traditional Arabic orthography, and is also a more efficient instrument for purposes of linguistic analysis and stating of grammatical facts.

3. Arrangement of the book

This book is divided into **thirty Units**. Practically all the Units have the following organization :

Pattern Sentences
Structure Sentences
Grammar
Drills

(1) **The Pattern Sentences** represent conversational material. Preceding most sentences are « breakdowns » giving the new words that occur in the sentence. The breakdowns are usually literal translations of the Arabic. The sentences are frequently a conversational English equivalent of the Arabic, not a word-for-word translation.

(2) **The Structure Sentences** do not represent conversational material. They are intended to introduce selected grammatical features in an inductive way. They form the basis both for formal grammatical statements and for grammatical drill.

(3) **The Grammar** is a formal statement of selected grammatical features of the language. This material is primarily for individual study.

(4) **The Drills** provide practice in using the vocabulary that has been introduced, and practice in making grammatical changes. The drill material is to be used after the Pattern Sentences and Structure Sentences have been thoroughly learned.

Following the Pattern Sentences of some Units is a sub-section entitled « Additional Vocabulary » containing words closely related to the subject matter of the Unit. These words are of secondary importance, and are only occasionally used to illustrate grammatical points.

4. Suggestions for the use of the book

This book is designed to teach the spoken language, not the written, and is based on the principle that the only way to learn to understand a spoken language is to hear it spoken, and the only way to learn to speak it is to practice speaking.

The book is intended for use with an instructor who is a native speaker of Arabic ; he need not be a professional teacher. Less sa-

tisfactory, but still useful, are recordings made by a native speaker. It is preferable to choose as a native speaker someone whose speech corresponds pretty closely to the kind of Arabic presented in this book ; this will avoid the necessity for making numerous changes. But in all cases, if there is a disagreement between this book and the usage of the instructor, imitate the instructor.

The native speaker has three main functions : to serve as a model for imitation, to serve as the final judge of what is acceptable usage, and to serve as a conversational partner. The second point requires some comment. The usage of the instructor is always right. There is no standard spoken Arabic, and whatever he says is correct. This does not mean, however, that the instructor can necessarily explain the grammar of his language. This is because spoken Arabic is never taught in the schools ; it is studied only by a small number of specialists. For all grammatical explanation, rely on the statements in this book.

In what follows we offer a number of recommendations for procedures that have been found useful in teaching and learning a spoken language. We also offer words of caution against certain practices that have been found to interfere with successful language learning.

To the student

(1) Mimic and imitate to the extent necessary to sound like a native speaker of Arabic.

(2) Review constantly, so that the speech habits of Arabic will become almost as familiar and well-established as the speech habits of English.

(3) Avoid the use of English in the classroom, except when necessary.

(4) Take advantage of every opportunity to use the language. This is the only way to build up real fluency and control.

To the instructor

(1) Always speak at a normal conversational speed. Slow, deliberate, or syllabified speech is not frequent outside the classroom. If the student is taught to speak in a slow, hesitating way, he will not sound natural.

(2) Correct mistakes in pronunciation and grammar. If a student makes a mistake, stop him and have him repeat the word or sentence after you. Help him to form proper habits, and try to keep him from continuing wrong ones.

(3) Avoid the use of English in the classroom except for occasional brief explanations or instructions when necessary.

Teaching techniques

The following recommendations are intended primarily for the instructor, but the student should be familiar with them as well.

(1) Repetition. With new material the instructor says the sentence and the students repeat after him in chorus. Later, the instructor calls on each student to repeat individually.

(2) Timing. The words and sentences must be memorized for the most effective results. If the student repeats haltingly, or must refer to the book frequently, or makes numerous errors, he is not ready to proceed to a new lesson.

(3) Dialogue. When possible, practice the sentences as a dialogue. Sometimes the instructor takes one part and a student the other; sometimes students take both parts.

(4) Variation. The instructor should try to make variations in the sentences in the book to the extent possible at any given time.

(5) Review. About every five lessons, have a careful review of all preceding material.

5. Abbreviations and symbols

adj. adjective

- f. feminine
- lit. literally
- m. masculine
- pl. plural
- / Alternating with: w-/wi-means « w- alternating with wi- ».
- The hyphen is used to indicate incompleteness: ma- means « the prefixed element ma- »; -aat means « the suffixed element -aat ».
- Indicates a nonexistent or impossible form.
- () Parentheses in the English text enclose explanatory material; in the Arabic text material that is sometimes omitted.

The meaning of other special symbols is explained as they occur.

THE SOUNDS OF ARABIC

The variety of Arabic presented and described in this book has thirty-three *consonants* and five *vowels*, indicated by letter symbols. Both consonants and vowels occur short (indicated by a single symbol: r, a) and long (indicated by doubling the symbol: rr, aa). The distinction between short and long is very important, as it may distinguish otherwise identical words: mara woman beside marra time, safar travel beside safar he traveled.

The consonants

Plain: b d f g ġ h ḥ j k l m n p q r s š t v w x y z ' 9

Velarized: ḍ ṣ̌ ṭ ẓ ḅ ḷ ṃ ṛ

Most of the *plain* consonants have near equivalents in English or some of the more familiar languages of Europe.

- b like the *b* in *bit*: baab door
- d like the *d* in *dip*: dawa medicine .
- f like the *f* in *fit*: fihim he understood.
- g like the *g* in *get*: siigāara cigarette.

- ġ like the *r* in Parisian French *mari*: ġaali expensive.
- h like the *h* in *hot*: haada this.
- j like the *s* in *measure*: jaab he brought.
- k like the *k* in *kit*: katab he wrote.
- l like the *l* in German *Lied*; a « clear » *l*, not like the *l* in *deal*: laazim necessary.
- m like the *m* in *met*: maktab office.
- n like the *n* in *net*: naas people.
- p like the *p* in *pet*: proova fitting; this sound only occurs in borrowed words.
- r like the *r* in Spanish *pero* when short: mara woman, like the *rr* in Spanish *perro* when long: marra time.
- s like the *s* in *sit*: saadis sixth.
- š like the *sh* in *ship*: šaaf he saw.
- t like the *t* in *tip*: taamin eighth.
- v like the *v* in *vat*: proova fitting; this sound only occurs in borrowed words.
- w like the *w* in *wet*: walad child.
- x like the *ch* in German *ach*: xaamis fifth.
- y like the *y* in *yet*: yoom day.
- z like the *z* in *zinc*: zeet oil.

The following plain consonants have no equivalents as distinctive sounds in English or the more familiar languages of Europe.

- ' a quick catch in the throat before, between, or after vowels: 'aal he said, sa'al he asked, suu' market; this sound is called « glottal stop. »
- q a *k*-sound made at a point somewhat behind the *c* in English *cool*: qisim part, maqaale article, mulḥaq attaché.
- ḥ a hissing *h*-sound made by lowering the back of the

tongue and tightening the muscles of the throat : ḥabb *he liked*, waahad *one*, raah *he went*.

- 9 a somewhat strained vowel-like sound, produced like ḥ above, but with the vocal cords vibrating: 9arabi *Arabic*, na9am *yes*, baa9 *he sold*.

The *velarized* consonants (also called « *emphatic* » or « *heavy* » consonants) are basically like their plain counterparts, but have an accompanying secondary articulation : the back of the tongue is raised toward the soft palate, and the whole tongue is slightly retracted. This secondary articulation modifies the contact surfaces of the tongue in producing the consonants and alters the shape of the mouth cavity in producing the neighboring vowels. The effect on the vowels is the most striking acoustically (see below).

There are two series of velarized consonants : a major series and a minor series. The major series consists of ḍ ṣ ṭ ṣ. The following list shows words with plain consonants paired with otherwise identical words containing velarized consonants.

plain		velarized	
taab	<i>he repented</i>	ṭaab	<i>he recovered</i>
faadi	<i>savior</i>	faaḍi	<i>free</i>
saahib	<i>pulling</i>	ṣaahib	<i>friend</i>
zaahir	<i>shining</i>	zaahir	<i>appearing</i>
batt	<i>he decided</i>	baṭṭ	<i>ducks</i>

The minor series consists of *b l m r*, marked by italics to distinguish them from their plain counterparts. Following are some contrasts.

plain		velarized	
baabha	<i>her door</i>	baaba	<i>papa</i>
walla	<i>he appointed</i>	walla	<i>by God</i>
mayy	<i>May (girl's name)</i>	mayy	<i>water</i>
jaari	<i>flowing</i>	jaari	<i>my neighbor</i>

The velarized consonants of the major series play a very important role in the grammar, and are systematically marked in the transcription. The velarized consonants of the minor series have almost no grammatical importance. In the transcription we mark these only in words that contain no occurrences of ḍ, ṣ, ṭ, or ṣ, and then only in words that virtually all speakers agree on pronouncing with velarization. Since there is no general agreement about the presence or absence of velarized *r*, we have chosen not to mark it at all in the main text.

The vowels

long : ii uu ee oo aa

short : i u e o a

Most of the vowels have close equivalents in English, but the following descriptions are only approximate.

ii like the *ea* in *beat* : jiib *bring* !

uu like the *oo* in *boot* : šuuf *look* !

ee like the *ai* in *bait* : beet *house*.

oo like the *oa* in *boat* : yoom *day*.

aa like the *a* in *had* : kaan *he was*.

In the neighborhood of velarized consonants these vowels are considerably modified by the secondary articulation of tongue-raising and retraction : *ii* and *ee* are centered, *uu* and *oo* are retracted, *aa* resembles the *a* in *father*, with retraction.

ṭiin	<i>clay</i>	šuuṭ	<i>wool</i>
bašiiṭ	<i>simple</i>	šuuṭ	<i>voice</i>
šeeṭ	<i>summer</i>	ṭoor	<i>ox</i>
ṭeer	<i>bird</i>	maṭaar	<i>airport</i>
ṭuul	<i>length</i>	zaabiṭ	<i>officer</i>

The short vowels show more variation than the long ones.

- i at the end of a word, like Arabic *ii* above but shorter ; in the middle of a word, like the *i* in *bit* : nisi *he forgot*.
- u at the end of a word, like Arabic *uu* above but shorter ; in the middle of a word, like the *u* in *put* : kuntu *you (pl) were*.
- e like Arabic *ee* above but shorter : sitte *six*. In the middle of a word, this sound only occurs in borrowings.
- o like Arabic *oo* above, but shorter : jibto *I brought it*. In the middle of a word, this sound only occurs in borrowings.
- a at the end of a word, between the *a* in *father* and the *u* in *but* ; in the middle of a word, varying between the *e* in *get* and the *a* in *cat*, depending on the neighboring consonant : bada *he began*, haka *he spoke*.

In the neighborhood of velarized consonants, *i* and *u* resemble the *e* in *wanted* (as pronounced by most speakers of English), with the lips rounded for *u* ; *a* is between the *a* in *father* and the *u* in *but*, with retraction ; *o* is lowered ; *e* does not occur.

ʔifil	<i>child</i>	ʔalab	<i>request</i>
ʃirt	<i>I became</i>	mwazzaf	<i>official</i>
ʔuru'	<i>roads</i>	haʔto	<i>he put it</i>
zulum	<i>injustice</i>	hafazo	<i>he kept it</i>

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICES

These *Practices* are not intended to cover all the relevant features of Arabic pronunciation, but rather concentrate on certain features that seem especially troublesome for speakers of English.

All the *Practices* work on the principle of contrast : items having different meanings and differing from one another only in certain features of pronunciation are grouped together in pairs, so that the differences will stand out when the items are pronounced in sequence.

1. Contrasts between t and ʔ

taab	<i>he repented</i>	ʔaab	<i>he recovered</i>
tiin	<i>figs</i>	ʔiin	<i>clay</i>
tuub	<i>repent !</i>	ʔuub	<i>bricks</i>
tall	<i>hill</i>	ʔall	<i>he looked</i>
batt	<i>he decided</i>	baʔt	<i>ducks</i>

2. Contrasts between d and ʔ

ʔaadi	<i>savior</i>	ʔaadi	<i>free</i>
bifiid	<i>it is useful</i>	bifiid	<i>it overflows</i>
marduud	<i>rejected</i>	marduud	<i>bruised</i>
dall	<i>he directed</i>	ʔall	<i>he stayed</i>
xadd	<i>cheek</i>	xadd	<i>he shook</i>
hadam	<i>he destroyed</i>	haʔam	<i>he digested</i>

3. Contrasts between s and š

saahib	<i>pulling</i>	šaahib	<i>friend</i>
'asaas	<i>foundation</i>	'ašaas	<i>punishment</i>
nasiib	<i>relative</i>	našiib	<i>lot</i>
mansuub	<i>attributed to</i>	manšuub	<i>suspended</i>
seef	<i>sword</i>	šeef	<i>summer</i>
sabb	<i>he cursed</i>	šabb	<i>he poured</i>

4. Contrasts between z and ẓ

zaahir	<i>shining</i>	ẓaahir	<i>appearing</i>
ḥaafiz	<i>stimulus</i>	ḥaafiz	<i>keeper</i>
9aziime	<i>banquet</i>	9aẓiime	<i>great (f)</i>
ḥazz	<i>he severed</i>	ḥazz	<i>luck</i>

5. Contrasts between h and ḥ

habb	<i>it blew</i>	ḥabb	<i>he liked</i>
hadd	<i>he demolished</i>	ḥadd	<i>boundary</i>
hayy	<i>here is</i>	ḥayy	<i>alive</i>
šabah	<i>resemblance</i>	šabah	<i>phantom</i>

6. Contrasts between ' and 9

'aal	<i>he said</i>	9aal	<i>fine</i>
'aam	<i>he got up</i>	9aam	<i>year</i>
'iid	<i>hand</i>	9iid	<i>feast day</i>
'add	<i>as much as</i>	9add	<i>he counted</i>

'ala	<i>he fried</i>	9ala	<i>on</i>
xala'	<i>he created</i>	xala9	<i>he overthrew</i>
raafa'	<i>he accompanied</i>	raafa9	<i>he defended</i>
sa'al	<i>he asked</i>	sa9al	<i>he coughed</i>
su'aal	<i>question</i>	su9aal	<i>coughing</i>

7. Contrasts between final vowel, and final ' and 9

wara	<i>behind</i>	wara'	<i>paper</i>
mara	<i>woman</i>	mara'	<i>he passed</i>
fii	<i>in</i>	fii'	<i>wake up !</i>
lamma	<i>when</i>	lamma9	<i>he polished</i>
wadda	<i>he led</i>	wadda9	<i>he saw (someone) off</i>
bala	<i>without</i>	bala9	<i>he swallowed</i>

8. Contrasts between ḥ, k, and x

ḥaal	<i>condition</i>	xaal	<i>uncle</i>
ḥaṭṭ	<i>he put</i>	xaṭṭ	<i>line</i>
ḥeeṭ	<i>wall</i>	xeeṭ	<i>thread</i>
ṭaḥṭ	<i>under</i>	ṭaxṭ	<i>bed</i>
kaaf	<i>the Arabic letter kāf</i>	xaaf	<i>he was afraid</i>
kaan	<i>he was</i>	xaan	<i>he betrayed</i>
šakar	<i>he thanked</i>	šaxar	<i>he snored</i>
kabbar	<i>he enlarged</i>	xabbar	<i>he informed</i>

9. Contrasts between x and ġ

xaab	<i>he failed</i>	ġaab	<i>he was absent</i>
xaali	<i>my uncle</i>	ġaali	<i>expensive</i>
maxluut	<i>mixed</i>	maġluut	<i>wrong</i>
xeer	<i>goodness</i>	ġeer	<i>other</i>
xeeme	<i>tent</i>	ġeeme	<i>cloud</i>

10. Contrasts between short a and long aa

katab	<i>he wrote</i>	kaatab	<i>he corresponded</i>
jamal	<i>camel</i>	jaamal	<i>he was courteous</i>
nafas	<i>breath</i>	naafas	<i>he competed</i>
dawa	<i>medecine</i>	daawa	<i>he treated medically</i>
ħaka	<i>he spoke</i>	ħaaka	<i>he talked to</i>
ġalam	<i>flag</i>	ġaalam	<i>world</i>
xabar	<i>news</i>	xaabar	<i>he communicated with</i>
ġazal	<i>he spun</i>	ġaazal	<i>he flirted</i>
baħaħ	<i>he threw down</i>	baaħaħ	<i>he wrestled</i>
ġaraħ	<i>he offered</i>	ġaaraħ	<i>he opposed</i>
šaħar	<i>it came out</i>	šaahaħar	<i>he confiscated</i>
ħafaz	<i>he kept</i>	ħaafaz	<i>he maintained</i>

11. Contrasts between single and double consonants

sakan	<i>he dwelled</i>	sakkan	<i>he housed</i>
bana	<i>he built</i>	banna	<i>mason</i>

jama9	<i>he added</i>	jamma9	<i>he collected</i>
šaraf	<i>honor</i>	šarraħ	<i>he honored</i>
najaħ	<i>he succeeded</i>	najjaħ	<i>he made succeed</i>
ħaram	<i>sanctuary</i>	ħarram	<i>he forbade</i>
ġalam	<i>flag</i>	ġallam	<i>he taught</i>
xabar	<i>news</i>	xabbar	<i>he informed</i>
ġalab	<i>he overcame</i>	ġallab	<i>he bothered</i>
šaħar	<i>it came out</i>	šaħħar	<i>he exported</i>
'aħa9	<i>he cut</i>	'aħħa9	<i>he cut into pieces</i>

PATTERN SENTENCES

Hello.	marḥaba.
Hello (in reply).	marḥabteen.
how	kiif
your (m) condition	ḥaalak
How are you ?	kiif ḥaalak ?
well (m)	mabṣuut
praise be to God	lḥamdilla
Well, praise God.	mabṣuut, ilḥamdilla.
you (m)	'inte
How are <i>you</i> ?	kiif ḥaalak 'inte ?
I	'ana
too, also	kamaan
I'm well too, praise God.	'ana mabṣuut kamaan, ilḥamdilla.
please (to a man, speaker offering something)	tfadḍal
rest (to a man)	striih
Please sit down.	tfadḍal striih.
Thank you.	šukran.
the family	l9eele
How's the family ?	kiif il9eele ?
well (pl)	mabṣuutiin
Well, praise God.	mabṣuutiin, ilḥamdilla.
the children	liwlaad

How are the children ?	kiif liwlaad ?
let us thank God	nuşkur 'alla
Well, thank God.	nuşkur 'alla, mabşuuṭiin.
By your (m) leave.	9an 'iznak.
Certainly (in reply).	tfaddal.
you (m) permit me	btismaḥli
a little bit	ṣwayy
Will you excuse me ?	btismaḥli ṣwayy ?
Certainly (in reply).	tfaddal.
Good-by (to a man, said by person leaving).	xaatṛak.
Good-by (said by person remaining).	ma9 issalaame.
May God keep you (m) (in reply to ma9 issalaame).	'alla ysallmak.

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Feminine forms

your (f) condition	ḥaalik
How are you ?	kiif ḥaalik ?
By your (f) leave.	9an 'iznik.
Good-by (to a woman).	xaatṛik.
May God keep you (f).	'alla ysallmik.
you (f)	'inti
How are you ?	kiif ḥaalik 'inti ?
please (to a woman, speaker offering something)	tfaddali

rest (to a woman)	striiḥi
Please sit down.	tfaddali striiḥi.
you (f) permit me	btismaḥiili
Will you excuse me ?	btismaḥiili ṣwayy ?
well (f)	mabşuuṭa
I'm well, praise God.	'ana mabşuuṭa, lḥamdilla.

2. Plural forms

your (pl) condition	ḥaalkum
How are you ?	kiif ḥaalkum ?
By your (pl) leave.	9an 'izinkum.
Good-by (to a group).	xaatṛikum.
May God keep you (pl).	'alla ysallimkum.
you (pl)	'intu
How are you ?	kiif ḥaalkum 'intu ?
please (to a group, speaker offering something)	tfaddalu
rest (to a group)	striiḥu
Please sit down.	tfaddalu striiḥu.
you (pl) permit me	btismaḥuuli
Will you excuse me ?	btismaḥuuli ṣwayy ?
we	niḥna
We're well, praise God.	niḥna mabşuuṭiin, ilḥamdilla.

3. Independent pronouns

I (m, f)	'ana
we	niḥna
you (m)	'inte

you (f)	'inti
you (pl)	'intu
he	huwwe
she	hiyye
they	humme
He's well.	huwwe mabšuut.
She's well.	hiyye mabšuuta.
They're well.	humme mabšuutiin.

GRAMMAR

1. General

Unless otherwise indicated, the term «Arabic» in the grammatical comments refers to the variety of Arabic presented and described in this book.

2. Word Stress

Every Arabic word of more than one syllable has one prominent syllable that stands out above the others when the word is pronounced in isolation. We call this prominence *stress*, and in the following examples will indicate its position by an accent mark (') over the vowel of the prominent syllable.

For the great majority of words the place of the stress is automatically determined by definite rules. If the word contains a «long» syllable (defined as a syllable that contains either a long vowel or a short vowel followed by two or more consonants), the stress falls on the long syllable that stands nearest the end of the word: ḥāalak *your condition*; mabšuut *well*; mabšuutiin, *well (pl)*; tfāddal *please*; šukran *thanks*. Otherwise the stress falls on the first syllable: 'ana *I*.

Since the position of the stress is almost completely automatic, we shall mark it in this text only for words that do not conform to the rules stated above.

4 (Unit 1)

3. Vowel prominence

In addition to word stress, Arabic also has another system of prominence that works independently of the stress. We call this *vowel prominence*. Like the stress, it too is automatic.

A long vowel has more sonority than a short vowel: compare the *aa* in kamaan with the *a* in 'ana; the *ii* in kiif with the *i* in 'inte; the *uu* in mabšuut with the *u* in šukran.

A short vowel immediately followed by a double consonant is more tense than a short vowel elsewhere: compare the first *a* in tfāddal with the first *a* in marḥaba; also ysallimkum with kamaan. This tenseness is preserved even when the double consonant is not followed immediately by a vowel: compare the first *a* in ysallmak *may he keep you* with the first *a* in salma *Selma* (a girl's name).

As a result of the three features of word stress, sonority, and tenseness, the acoustic impression of Arabic is quite different from that of English.

4. Sentences without verbs

Arabic sentences of the following type do not have any element corresponding to English *is, am, are*.

kiif ḥaalak? *How is your condition?*

'ana mabšuut. *I am well.*

niḥna mabšuutiin. *We are well.*

5. Independent pronouns

Arabic has the following set of independent pronouns.

'ana	<i>I (m, f)</i>	'intu	<i>you (pl)</i>
niḥna	<i>we</i>	huwwe	<i>he</i>
'inte	<i>you (m)</i>	hiyye	<i>she</i>
'inti	<i>you (f)</i>	humme	<i>they</i>

There is no pronoun corresponding to English *it*.

The independent pronouns are not used so much in Arabic

as are the corresponding forms in English. They are used mainly as subjects of sentences without verbs, to prevent possible ambiguities, and to add emphasis.

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

marhaba.	ma9 issalaame.
kiif haalak ?	kiif il9eele ?
tfaddal striih.	kiif liwlaad ?
9an 'iznak.	kiif haalik ?
btismahli shwayy?	kiif haalkum ?
xaatrak.	

2. The following sentences are said to a man. How would you say them to a woman ? To a group ?

kiif haalak ?	btismahli shwayy?
tfaddal striih.	xaatrak.
9an 'iznak.	'alla ysallmak.

UNIT 2 • Directions. Numbers 1-10.

PATTERN SENTENCES

Good morning.	shabaah ilxeer.
Good morning (in reply).	shabaah ilxeer. <i>or</i> shabaah innuur.
please (to a man, speaker requesting something)	min faḍlak
where	feen <i>or</i> ween
the American Embassy	ssafaara l'ameerk(aan)iyye
Please, where is the American Embassy ?	min faḍlak, feen issafaara l'ameerkaaniyye ?
to	9ala, 9a-
right	yamiin
To your (m) right.	9ala yamiinak.
the American Consulate	l'unshliyye l'ameerkaaniyye
Please, where is the American Consulate ?	min faḍlak, ween il'unshliyye l'ameerkaaniyye ?
left	shmaal
To your (m) left.	9ala shmaalak.
Where is the post office ?	feen ilbooshta ?
walk (to a man)	'imsi
straight ahead	duḡri
later on	ba9deen
ask (to a man)	'is'al
Go straight ahead, then ask.	'imsi duḡri, ba9deen 'is'al.
Where is the market ?	ween issuu' ?
go (to a man)	ruuh

Go straight ahead.	ruuh dugri.
Where is the toilet?	feen beet ilmaway?
Here.	hoon.
Over there.	hunaak.
you (m) know	bti9raf
house	heet
Do you know where Yusuf	bti9raf ween beet yuusif
Haddad's house is?	haddaad?
sorry (m)	mit'assif
not	maa
I know	ba9raf
Sorry, I don't know.	mit'assif, maa ba9raf.
direct me (to a man)	dillni
hotel	'uteel
Please direct me to the	min faḍlak, dillni, 9a(la)
Hotel Plaza.	'uteel plaaza.
with me	ma9i
Please come along with me.	tfaḍḍal ma9i.
you (m) understood	fhimt
Did you understand?	fhimt?
yes	na9am
I (m, f) understood	fhimt
Yes, I understood.	na9am, fhimt.
no	la'
No, I didn't understand.	la', maa fhimt.
Additional expressions :	
Good evening.	masa lxeer.
Good evening (in reply).	masa lxeer. or masa nnuur.

8 (Unit 2)

Welcome!	'ahlan wasahlan. or 'ahla wsahla.
Welcome (to a man, in reply)!	'ahla wsahla fiik.
Thank you.	šukran.
You're welcome (in reply).	9afwan.
The peace upon you.	'assalaamu 9alaykum.
And upon you the peace (in reply).	wa9alaykumu ssalaam.
Good night.	leele sa9iide.
Good night (in reply).	sa9iide mbaarake.
One	waahad (m), waḥde (f)
Two	tneen (m), tintein (f)
Three	tlaate
Four	'arba9a
Five	xamse
Six	sitte
Seven	sab9a
Eight	tamaanye
Nine	tis9a
Ten	9ašra
Zero	sifir

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

I. Feminine forms

please (to a woman, speaker requesting something)	min faḍlik
--	------------

(Unit 2) 9

Please, where is Yusuf Haddad's house?	min faḍlik, ween beet yuusif ḥaddaad?
To your (f) right.	9ala yamiinik.
To your (f) left.	9ala šmaalik.
walk (to a woman)	'imši
ask (to a woman)	'is'ali
Go straight ahead, then ask.	'imši duğri, ba9deen 'is'ali.
go (to a woman)	ruuḥi
Go straight ahead.	ruuḥi duğri.
you (f) know	bti9rafi
Do you know where the American Embassy is?	bti9rafi ween issafaara l'ameerkaaniyye?
sorry (f)	mit'assfe
Sorry, I don't know.	mit'assfe, maa ba9raf.
direct me (to a woman)	dilliini
Please direct me to the market.	min faḍlik, dilliini 9assuu'.
Did you (f) understand?	fhimti?
Please come along with me.	tfaḍḍali ma9i.
Welcome (to a woman, in reply).	'ahla wsahla fiiki.

2. Plural forms

please (to a group, speaker requesting something)	min faḍilkum
Please, where is the Hotel Plaza?	min faḍilkum, ween 'uteel plaaza?
To your (pl) right.	9ala yamiinkum.
To your (pl) left.	9ala šmaalkum.

walk (to a group)	'imšu
ask (to a group)	'is'alu
Go straight ahead, then ask.	'imšu duğri, ba9deen 'is'alu.
go (to a group)	ruuḥu
Go straight ahead.	ruuḥu duğri.
you (pl) know	bti9rafu
Do you know where the American Consulate is?	bti9rafu ween il'unṣliyye l'ameerkaaniyye?
sorry (pl)	mit'assfiin
we know	bni9raf
Sorry, we don't know.	mit'assfiin, maa bni9raf.
direct me (to a group)	dilluuni
Please direct me to the post office.	min faḍilkum, dilluuni 9albooṣṭa.
direct us (to a group)	dilluuna
Please direct us to the market.	min faḍilkum, dilluuna 9assuu'.
Did you (pl) understand?	fhimtu?
Yes, we understood.	na9am, fhimna.
with us	ma9na
Please come along with us.	tfaḍḍalu ma9na.
Welcome (to a group, in reply).	'ahla wsahla fiikum.

GRAMMAR

1. The transition vowel

The transition vowel, indicated in the transcription by an italic *i* or *u*, is a weak vowel glide that serves to interrupt a

sequence of consonants, both within words and across word boundaries. Within a word we find both *i* and *u*; across word boundaries only *i*.

The presence or absence of the transition vowel is almost completely predictable in terms of the consonant clusters involved.

(1) Within a word, a cluster of three consonants generally has a transition vowel between the first and second consonant: 9an 'izinkum *by your leave*, min faḍilkum, *please*. Such a cluster generally does not have a transition vowel if the second consonant is *t*, or if the first consonant is *n*, and never has one if the first two consonants of the cluster are identical: striih *rest!*, 'unṣliyye *consulate*, dillni *direct me!*

(2) When two words coming together produce a cluster of three or more consonants, a transition vowel occurs at the point of word division if at least two of the consonants belong to the second word: ma9 issalaame *good-by*, feen issafaara? *where is the embassy?*

The transition vowel differs from the other vowels in four significant ways: it is never stressed; it is never tense, even before a double consonant; its occurrence and position are almost entirely automatic; it does not count as a vowel in determining the position of the main word stress. For example, 'izinkum *by your leave* is stressed on the *first* syllable, as though the word were 'iznkum.

Beginning with Unit 3 we shall not mark the transition vowel at word boundaries, where its presence is predictable.

2. Pronoun endings — I

In addition to the independent pronouns, Arabic has a set of pronoun forms that occur as suffixes. These are here called *pronoun endings*. Six of them have occurred so far.

-i	<i>my, me, I</i>	wlaadi	<i>my children</i>
-na	<i>our, us, we</i>	wlaadna	<i>our children</i>
-ak	<i>your, you (m)</i>	wlaadak	<i>your (m) children</i>
-ik	<i>your, you (f)</i>	wlaadik	<i>your (f) children</i>

-kum	<i>your, you (pl)</i>	wlaadkum	<i>your (pl) children</i>
-ni	<i>me</i>	dillni	<i>direct me!</i>

The form -ni occurs only with verbs, where -i does not occur.

The translation of a pronoun ending depends upon the structure of English. For example -na is translated as «our» in wlaadna *our children*, but as «us» in dillna *direct us*.

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

ṣabaah ilxeer.	'ahla wsahla.
masa lxeer.	ṣukran.
leele sa9iide.	fhimt?
'assalaamu 9alaykum.	

2. The following sentences are said to a man. How would you say them to a woman? To a group?

min faḍlak.	ruuh duḡri.
9ala yamiinak.	min faḍlak, dillni 9assuu'.
9ala ṣmaalak.	tfadḍal ma9i.
'ahla wsahla fiik.	bti9raf ween beet yuusif?
'imṣi duḡri, ba9deen 'is'al.	fhimt?

3. Give appropriate replies to the following questions.

feen issafaara l'ameerkaaniyye?
ween il'unṣliyye l'ameerkaaniyye?
ween issuu'?

feen beet ilmayy ?
 feen ilbooṣta ?
 feen beet yuusif ḥaddaad ?
 ween 'uteel plaaza ?

UNIT 3 • Arrival. Numbers 11-20.

PATTERN SENTENCES

your presence (a term of address)	ḥadirtak
from	min, mni-
Where are you from ?	ḥadirtak min feen ?
America	'ameerka
I'm from America.	'ana min 'ameerka.
how much, how long	'addeeṣ
it became for you	ṣarлак
How long have you been here ?	'addeeṣ ṣarлак hoon ?
it became for me	ṣarli
day	yoom
two days	yoomeen
three days	tlat tiyyaam
I've been here two days.	ṣarli hoon yoomeen.
you (m) came	'ijiit
How did you come ?	kiif 'ijiit ?
I came	'ijiit
in	fii, fi-
the boat	lbaaboor
the airplane	ṭṭayyaara
I came by plane.	'ijiit fiṭṭayyaara.
she was	kaanat
your trip	safirtak
if God wills	nṣaal/a

good (f)	mniiha
How was your trip? Good?	kiif kaanat safirtak?
	n̄saalla mniiha?
It was good, praise God.	mniiha, lhamdu lillaah.
staying (m)	naazil
Where are you staying?	feen naazil?
I'm staying at the Hotel Plaza.	'ana naazil fii 'uteel plaaza.
this (m)	haada
place	maħall
good (m)	mniih
Oh, that's a good place.	'oo, haada maħall mniih.
thing, something	sii
fine (invariable adj.)	9aal
That's fine.	sii 9aal.
there is, there are	fii
restaurant	maṭ9am
Where's there a good restaurant?	ween fii maṭ9am mniih?
the Salam Restaurant	maṭ9am ssalaam
not	miš
not bad	miš baṭṭaal
The Salam Restaurant isn't bad.	maṭ9am ssalaam, miš baṭṭaal.
inexpensive (m)	rxiiš
It's also inexpensive.	kamaan rxiiš.
other than it	geero
Is there any other?	fii geero?
Italian (m)	tilyaani
next to	jamb or janb
There's an Italian restaurant	fii maṭ9am tilyaani
next to the hotel.	jamb l'uteel.

16 (Unit 3)

but	bass
expensive (m)	gaali
But it's a little expensive.	bass, gaali šwayy.
Eleven	ḥda9š
Twelve	ṭna9š
Thirteen	tlat ṭa9š
Fourteen	'arba9 ṭa9š
Fifteen	xams ṭa9š
Sixteen	sitt ṭa9š
Seventeen	saba9 ṭa9š
Eighteen	taman ṭa9š
Nineteen	tisi9 ṭa9š
Twenty	9išriin

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Feminine forms

(said to a woman)

your presence	ḥaḍirtik
Where are you from?	ḥaḍirtik min feen?
it became for you	šarlik
How long have you been here?	'addeš šarlik hoon?
your trip	safirtik
How was your trip?	kiif kaanat safirtik?
you (f) came	'ijiti
How did you come?	kiif 'ijiti?
staying (f)	naazle

(Unit 3) 17

Where are you staying?

feen naazle?

We're staying at the Hotel Plaza.

niḥna naazliin fii 'uteel plaaza.

2. Plural forms

(said to a group)

your presences	ḥaḍraatkum
Where are you from?	ḥaḍraatkum min feen?
it became for you	ṣarlkum
How long have you been here?	'addees ṣarlkum hoon?
your trip	safrirkum
How was your trip?	kiif kaanat safrirkum?
you (pl) came	'ijjitu
How did you come?	kiif 'ijjitu?
staying (pl)	naazliin
Where are you staying?	feen naazliin?

3. Plural forms

(said by or for a group)

Damascus	ššaam
We're from Damascus.	niḥna mniššaam.
it became for us	ṣarlḥa
week	'usbuu9 or jum9a
two weeks	'usbuu9een or jum9teen
three weeks	tlat 'asabii9 or tlat juma9
We've been here two weeks.	ṣarlḥa hoon 'usbuu9een.
we came	'ijjiina
the car	ssayyaara
We came by car.	'ijjiina fissayyaara.

4. Masculine forms

(said about a man)

his presence	ḥaḍirto
Where's he from?	ḥaḍirto min feen?
Lebanon	lubnaan
He's from Lebanon.	huwwe min lubnaan.
it became for him	ṣarlo
How long has he been here?	'addees ṣarlo hoon?
month	šahir
two months	šahreem
three months	tlat tušhur
He's been here two months.	ṣarlo hoon šahreem.
his trip	safirto
How was his trip?	kiif kaanat safirto?
he came	'aja
How did he come?	kiif 'aja?
He came by plane.	'aja fiṭṭayyaara.

5. Feminine forms

(said about a woman)

her presence	ḥaḍritha
Where's she from?	ḥaḍritha min feen?
She's from America.	hiyye min 'ameerka.
it became for her	ṣarlha

How long has she been here?	'addees şarlha hoon?
She's been here three days.	şarlha hoon tlat tiyyaam.
her trip	safritha
How was her trip?	kiif kaanat safritha?
she came	'ajat
How did she come?	kiif 'ajat?
She came by boat.	'ajat filbaaboor.

6. Plural forms

(said about a group)

their presences	ħađraathum
Where are they from?	ħađraathum min feen?
Syria	suuriyya
They're from Syria.	humme min suuriyya.
it became for them	şarlhum
How long have they been here?	'addees şarlhum hoon?
They've been here three months.	şarlhum hoon tlat tuşhur.
their trip	safrithum
How was their trip?	kiif kaanat safrithum?
they came	'aju
or	willa
Did they come by plane or by ship?	'aju fiţţayyaara, willa filbaaboor?
They came by plane.	'aju fiţţayyaara.

GRAMMAR

I. Intonation

The accentual features of the sentence in Arabic have never been fully described, and only the chief types of intonation can be indicated here.

There appear to be four main sentence-final intonations:

(1) *Statement*. The voice begins on a mid pitch, rises slightly on the last stressed syllable, and drops to a low pitch at the end.

'ana min 'ameerka. *I'm from America.*

haada maħall muiiħ. *That's a good place.*

'ijiit fiţţayyaara. *I came by plane.*

(2) *Yes-or-No Question*. The intonation is like that for the statement, but with a distinct rise on the last stressed syllable and no drop at the end.

btismahli şwayy? *Will you excuse me?*

'ijiit fiţţayyaara? *Did you come by plane?*

fhimt? *Did you understand?*

(3) *Specific Question* (a question containing a special interrogative word). The voice is high on the stressed syllable of the interrogative word, and falls quickly to mid pitch for the rest of the sentence.

kiif ħaalak? *How are you?*

'addees şarlak hoon? *How long have you been here?*

ħađirtak min feen? *Where are you from?*

(4) *Alternative Question* (a question containing a word for «or»). The voice is above mid pitch on the word for «or» and falls to below mid pitch for the rest of the sentence.

'ijiit fiţţayyaara, willa filbaaboor? *Did you come by plane or by boat?*

There are also two non-final intonations.

(1) *Continuing*. The voice rises and dips slightly, with an optional pause.

min faḍlak, dillni ʔassuu'. *Please direct me to the market.*

maṭ9am ssalaam, miš baṭṭaal. *The Salam Restaurant isn't bad.*

(2) *Suspensive*. The voice is level, with no rise or fall.

'oo, haada maḥall mniiḥ. *Oh, that's a good place.*

An accurate control of intonation is just as important for intelligibility as is an accurate control of the vowels and consonants. Most speakers of a second language fail to master the intonation system, and this failure is one of the principal features of what is called a «foreign accent».

2. Pronoun endings — II

In Unit 2 we listed six of the pronoun endings. The remaining three are given below.

-o	<i>his, him, he</i>	wlaado	<i>his children</i>
-ha	<i>her, she</i>	wlaadha	<i>her children</i>
-hum	<i>their, them, they</i>	wlaadhum	<i>their children</i>

3. Negation

The word *maa not* is used with verbs (and a few other verb-like words).

maa fhimt. *I didn't understand.*

maa ba9raf. *I don't know.*

maa fii maṭ9am hoon. *There isn't any restaurant here.*

The word *miš not* is used only with adjectives and adverbs.

huwwe miš mabṣuut. *He's not well.*

huwwe miš hoon. *He's not here.*

Both these words frequently have a louder stress than the words that they negate.

4. The word nṣaalla

The word *nṣaalla* (lit. *if God wills*) indicates that the speaker hopes that something has turned out favorably, or will turn out favorably. When used in a question, the sentence frequently has the intonation of the specific question, with the voice high on the word *nṣaalla*.

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

ḥaḍirtak min feen ?	fii ḡeero ?
'addees ṣarлак hoon ?	fii maṭ9am fil'uteel ?
kiif 'ijit ?	fii maṭ9am tilyaani hoon ?
kiif kaanat safirtak ?	feen 'uteel plaaza ?
feen naazil ?	feen beet lmayy ?
ween fii maṭ9am mniiḥ ?	'ijit fiṭṭayyaara ?
kiif maṭ9am ssalaam ?	'ijit filbaaboor ?
feen maṭ9am ssalaam ?	'ijit fissayyaara ?

2. The following sentences are said to a man. How would you say them to a woman ? To a group ?

min feen ḥaḍirtak ?	kiif kaanat safirtak ?
'addees ṣarлак hoon ?	feen naazil ?
kiif 'ijit ?	

3. The following sentences are said about a man. How would you say them about a woman ? About a group ?

min feen haḍirto ?	kiif 'aja ?
min feen huwwe ?	feen naazil ?
'addees ṣarlo hoon ?	

4. In each of the following sentences replace the word yoomeen by a different time expression.

ṣarlo hoon yoomeen.
 ṣarlha yoomeen fii 'uteel
 plaaza.
 ṣarlha fiššaam yoomeen.

PATTERN SENTENCES

take me (to a man)	xudni
the town	lbalad
Please take me to the town.	min faḍlak, xudni 9albalad.
With pleasure.	tikram. <i>or</i> 9ala 9eeni. <i>or</i> 9ala raasi.
ready, present (m)	haadir.
I'm ready.	haadir.
going (m)	raayih
Where are you going ?	ween raayih ?
you want	biddak
you (m) go	truuh
Where do you want to go ?	ween biddak truuh ?
I want	biddi
I go	'aruuh
the movies	ssinama
I want to go to the movies.	biddi 'aruuh 9assinama.
How much do you want ?	'addees biddak ?
it is enough	bikaafi
one pound (currency)	liira
two pounds	liirteen
three pounds	tlat liiraat
Two pounds is enough.	bikaafi liirteen.
much, a lot, too much	ktiir
That's too much.	haada ktiir.

I give you	ba9tiik
half	nuṣṣ!
and	w-/wi-
I'll give you a pound and a half.	ba9tiik liira wnuṣṣ.
good, all right	ṭayyib
it doesn't matter	ma9alees
All right. Get in.	ṭayyib, ma9alees. tfaḍḍal.
Slow down.	9a(la) mahlak.
stop for me	wa''ifli
Stop here.	wa''ifli hoon.
Good-by.	ma9 ssalaame.
Good-by (in reply).	'alla ysallmak.
Twenty	9iṣriin
Thirty	tlaatiin
Forty	'arb9iin
Fifty	xamsiin
Sixty	sittiin
Seventy	sab9iin
Eighty	tamaniin
Ninety	tis9iin
One hundred	miyye

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

I. Feminine forms

(said to a woman)

going (f)

raayha

Where are you going?	ween raayha?
you want	biddik
you (f) go	truuḥi
Where do you want to go?	ween biddik truuh?
How much do you want?	'addees biddik?
I give you	ba9tiiki
I'll give you three pounds.	ba9tiiki tlat liiraat.

2. Plural forms

(said to a group)

going (pl)	raayhiin
Where are you going?	ween raayhiin?
you want	bidkum
you (pl) go	truuhu
Where do you want to go?	ween bidkum truuhu?
How much do you want?	'addees bidkum?
I give you	ba9tiikum
I'll give you four pounds.	ba9tiikum 'arba9 liiraat.

3. Plural forms

(said by or for a group)

take us	xudna
the airport	lmaṭaar
Please take us to the airport.	min faḍlak, xudna 9almaṭaar.
we want	bidna
we go	nruuh
We want to go to the town.	bidna nruuh 9albalad.

stop for us	wa'ifilna
Stop here.	wa'ifilna hoon.

4. Masculine forms
(said about a man)

take him	xudo
Take him to the airport.	xudo 9almaṭaar.
he wants	biddo
he goes	yruuḥ
Where does he want to go?	ween biddo yruuḥ?
How much does he want?	'addees biddo?
I give him	ba9ṭii(h)
I'll give him five pounds.	ba9ṭii xamis liiraat.

5. Feminine forms
(said about a woman)

take her	xudha
Take her to the Embassy.	xudha 9assafaara.
she wants	bidha
she goes	truuḥ
Where does she want to go?	ween bidha truuh?
How much does she want?	'addees bidha?
I give her	ba9ṭiiha
I'll give her six pounds.	ba9ṭiiha sitt liiraat.

6. Plural forms
(said about a group)

take them	xudhum
-----------	--------

Take them to the hotel.	xudhum 9al'uteel.
they want	bidhum
they go	yruuḥu
Where do they want to go?	ween bidhum yruuḥu?
How much do they want?	'addees bidhum?
I give them	ba9ṭiihum
I'll give them seven pounds.	ba9ṭiihum sabi9 liiraat.

GRAMMAR

1. Variants of the pronoun endings

After stems ending in a vowel, four of the pronoun endings have a variant form.

-y	<i>my, me, I</i>	waraay	<i>behind me</i>
-k	<i>your, you (m)</i>	ba9ṭiik	<i>I give you (m)</i>
-ki	<i>your, you (f)</i>	ba9ṭiiki	<i>I give you (f)</i>
-(h)	<i>his, him, he</i>	ba9ṭii(h)	<i>I give him</i>

The ending -(h) *his, him, he* often drops in the middle of a sentence, but the preceding vowel remains long.

2. Summary of the pronoun endings

The following summarizes the pronoun endings. For a stem ending in a consonant we use *beet house*; for a stem ending in a vowel, *bya9ṭi he gives*.

beeti	<i>my house</i>	bya9ṭiini	<i>he gives me</i>
beetna	<i>our house</i>	bya9ṭiina	<i>he gives us</i>
beetak	<i>your (m) house</i>	bya9ṭiik	<i>he gives you (m)</i>

PATTERN SENTENCES

heat	šoob
today	lyoom
It's very warm today.	šoob ktiir lyoom.
open (to a man)	'iftah
the window	ššubbaak
Please open the window.	min faḍlak, 'iftah ššubbaak.
coldness	bard
It's very cold today.	bard ktiir lyoom.
close (to a man)	sakkir
the door	lbaab
Please close the door.	min faḍlak, sakkir lbaab.
what	šuu, 'eeš
in	bi-/b-
in Arabic	bil9arabi
What's this in Arabic?	šuu haada bil9arabi?
book	ktaab
This is a book.	haada ktaab.
And what's this?	wšuu haada?
this (f)	haadi
map	xaarṭa, xariiṭa
This is a map.	haadi xaarṭa.
cigarette	siigaara
Do you want a cigarette?	biddak siigaara?
Please.	min faḍlak.

No, thanks.
with you
box of matches
lighter

Have you a match?

with me

Yes, I have. Here (offering it).

Sorry, I haven't.

Additional vocabulary

1. Masculine nouns

book
window
door
office
chair
pencil, pen
fountain pen
notebook

2. Feminine nouns

map
cigarette

lighter
table
room
sheet of paper
newspaper

la', šukran.

ma9ak

kibriite

'addaaha

ma9ak kibriite?

ma9i

na9am, ma9i. tfaḍḍal.

mit'assif, maa fii ma9i.

sing.

plural

ktaab

kutub

šubbaak

šababiik

baab

bwaab

maktab

makaatib

kursi

karaasi

'alam

'laam

'alam hibir

'laam hibir

daftar

dafaatir

xaarṭa, xariiṭa xaraayit

siigaara siigaaraat,

sagaayir

'addaaha

'addaahaat

ṭaawle

ṭaawlaat

'uudā

'uwaḍ

war'a

war'aat, wraa'

jariide

jaraayid

magazine
Twenty-one
Twenty-two
Twenty-three
Twenty-four
Twenty-five
Twenty-six
Twenty-seven
Twenty-eight
Twenty-nine

majalle majallaat
waahad w9išriin
tneen w9išriin
tlaate w9išriin
'arba9a w9išriin
xamse w9išriin
sitte w9išriin
sab9a w9išriin
tamaanye w9išriin
tis9a w9išriin

the doors
the children
the book
the pencils
the history, the date
the airplane
the notebook
the noon
the car
the soap
the oil
the officer
the window
the people
the night, tonight
the head man
the newspaper

libwaab
liwlaad
liktaab
li'laam
ttaariix
tṭayyaara
ddaftar
qduhur
ssayyaara
ssaabuun
zzeet
zzaabiṭ
sṣubbaak
nnaas
lleele
rra'iis
ljariide or jjariide

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. The prefix for « the »

the cup
the door
the office
the sheet of paper
the chair
the customs
the day, today
the map
the midday meal
the Koran
the bath(room)
the evening meal
the identity card
the pencil

lfinjaan
lbaab
lmaktab
lwar'a
lkursi
lgumruk
lyoom
lxariitla
lgada
lqur'aan
lḥammaam
l9aša
lhawiyye
l'alam

2. Commands (said to a man)

Please sit down.
Bring the chair.
Go straight ahead.
Ask at the hotel.
Direct me to the movie.
Close the door.
Go straight ahead.
Give me a pencil.
Take this.

tfadḍal striih.
jiib lkursi.
ruuh duḡri.
'is'al fil'uteel.
dillni 9assinama.
sakkir lbaab.
'imši duḡri.
'a9ṭini 'alam.
xood haada.

Take the newspaper with you. xud ljariide ma9ak.

3. Commands

(said to a woman)

Please sit down.	tfaddali striihi.
Bring the newspaper.	jiibi ljariide.
Go straight ahead.	ruuhi dugri.
Ask at the airport.	'is'ali filma'kaar.
Direct me to the office.	dilliini 9almaktab.
Close the window.	sakkri ššubbaak.
Go straight ahead.	'imši dugri.
Give me a match.	'a9tiini kibriite.
Take the children with you.	xudi liwlaad ma9ik.

4. Commands

(said to a group)

Please sit down.	tfaddalu striihu.
Bring the children with you.	jiibu liwlaad ma9kum.
Go straight ahead.	ruuhu dugri.
Ask at the office.	'is'alu filmaktab.
Direct us to the post office.	dilluuna 9alboošta.
Close the doors.	sakkru libwaab.
Go straight ahead.	'imšu dugri.
Give me the magazines.	'a9tuuni lmajallaat.
Take the identity cards with you.	xudu lhawiyyaat ma9kum.

5. Adjectives

(masculine forms)

Where is there a good restaurant?	ween fii maṭṭam mniih?
new	jdiid
This is a new restaurant.	haada maṭṭam jdiid.
The new restaurant is next to the Hotel Plaza.	Imaṭṭam jjdiid, jamb
He's not well.	'uteel plaaza.
I'm sorry (man speaking).	huwwe miš mabšuuṭ.
	'ana mit'assif.

6. Adjectives

(feminine forms)

He has a new car.	9indo sayyaara jdiide.
He came in his new car.	'aja fii sayyaarto jjdiide.
She's not well.	hiyye miš mabšuuṭa.
I'm sorry (woman speaking).	'ana mit'assfe.
There are three new hotels here.	fii hoon tlat 'uteelaat jdiide.

7. Adjectives

(Plural forms)

Their children aren't well.	wlaadhūm miš mabšuuṭiin.
We're sorry.	niḥna mit'assfiin.

1. The prefix for « the »

The Arabic equivalent of the English definite article *the* is a prefix. This prefix has the form *l-* if the first consonant of the word to which it is attached is one of the following: *f b m w k g y x ġ q h 9 h'*. It is *li-* if the word begins with a consonant cluster whose first member is one of the preceding series.

The *l-* is completely assimilated, resulting in a double consonant, if the first consonant is one of the following: *t ṭ d ḍ s š z ẓ ṣ n l r*. The *l-* may or may not be assimilated if the first consonant is *j*.

After silence or a pause, this prefix may be preceded by a short *'i-*, as *'ilbaab the door*, *'issayyara the car*, *'iliktaab the book*.

2. Command forms of verbs

The command form of the Arabic verb indicates whether the command is said to a man, to a woman, or to a group. The masculine form has no ending; the feminine form ends in *-i*; the plural form ends in *-u*. There is often some change in the underlying form before the endings *-i* and *-u*. Following are some examples taken from the Structure Sentences:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>plural</i>	
jiib	jiibi	jiibu	<i>bring!</i>
dill	dilli	dillu	<i>direct!</i>
'is'al	'is'ali	'is'alu	<i>ask!</i>
sakkir	sakkri	sakkru	<i>close!</i>
'imši	'imši	'imšu	<i>walk!</i>
xood, xud	xudi	xudu	<i>take!</i>

The formation of the command stem will be discussed in Unit 8.

3. Nouns

Nouns in Arabic show two grammatical genders, traditionally labelled masculine and feminine. These terms are merely labels, and do not necessarily correspond to natural gender, though nouns denoting male beings are usually masculine, and nouns denoting female beings are usually feminine.

Most feminine nouns end in *-e* or *-a*; most masculine nouns end in a consonant. The exceptions are few.

Most nouns have three grammatical numbers: singular, denoting one individual of the kind; dual, denoting two individuals; and plural, denoting more than two individuals.

4. Definite and indefinite nouns

A noun in Arabic is said to be grammatically definite if it has the prefix for « the » or a pronoun ending. A small class of nouns, chiefly proper names, is also definite, though lacking these elements. All other nouns are grammatically indefinite.

5. Adjectives

Adjectives in Arabic typically have three forms: masculine, feminine, and plural. The feminine is formed from the masculine by adding *-e/-a*, frequently with some change in the underlying form. The plural of some adjectives is formed from the feminine by adding *-iin*; with others the plural shows a different internal arrangement of the vowels in respect to the consonants. Following are some typical adjectives.

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>plural</i>	
mabṣuut	mabṣuuta	mabṣuutiin	<i>well</i>
haadir	haadra	haadriin	<i>ready</i>
mit'assif	mit'assfe	mit'assfiin	<i>sorry</i>
mniih	mniiha	mnaah	<i>good</i>

rxiiṣ	rxiiṣa	rxaaṣ	<i>cheap</i>
ḡaali	ḡaalye	ḡaalyiin	<i>expensive</i>

The dividing line between an adjective and a noun in Arabic is not sharply drawn.

6. Noun-adjective agreement

Adjectives are tied to the nouns they modify by a system of agreement. With masculine nouns the adjective is masculine; with feminine nouns it is feminine. With personal plurals (i.e., plurals denoting human beings) the adjective is plural. With non-personal plurals the adjective is usually feminine singular, occasionally plural. With dual nouns the adjective is plural.

In a noun-adjective construction the adjective follows the noun. If the noun is definite the adjective has the prefix for «the».

7. The feminine ending -e/-a

The typical marker of the feminine noun or adjective is the ending -e/-a. The choice of -e or -a is almost completely determined by the nature of the consonant that immediately precedes the ending. If it is a throat consonant (x ḡ q ḥ ʕ h ') or a velarized consonant (t ḍ ṣ ḏ) the ending is -a. After r it is usually -a, occasionally -e. After all the other consonants it is -e. There are a few exceptions.

DRILLS

1. Answer each of the following questions twice, once affirmatively and once negatively, as illustrated in the first two.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| (1) biddak siigaara? | na9am. biddi. |
| | la'. maa biddi. |

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| (2) ma9ak jariide? | na9am. ma9i. |
| | la'. maa fii ma9i. |
| biddak 'alam? | ma9o hawiyye? |
| ma9ak majalle? | ma9ak daftar? |
| biddo xaarta? | ma9ak kibriite? |
| biddak war'a? | |

2. Each of the following sentences contains a noun without the prefix for «the». For each make up a matching sentence containing the same noun with the prefix for «the», as illustrated in the first two.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) ween fii maṭ9am? | ween lmaṭ9am? |
| (2) min faḍlak, 'a9ṭiini war'a. | min faḍlak, 'a9ṭiini lwar'a. |
| ma9ak jariide? | ween fii xaarta? |
| ween fii 'uteel? | ween fii ṭaawle? |
| 'a9ṭiini war'a. | ween fii jariide? |
| biddak xaarta? | min faḍlak, xood 'alam ma9ak. |
| ween fii 'alam? | 'a9ṭiini ktaab. |
| xood war'a. | jiib kursi ma9ak. |
| jiib kursi. | |

3. In the following sentence replace siigaara by as many different nouns as possible.

btismahli bsiigaara? *May I take a cigarette?*

4. In the following sentence replace ljariide by as many different nouns as possible.

btismahli biljariide? *May I take the newspaper?*

5. Each of the following command sentences is said to a man. Match each with two sentences, one a command sentence as

said to a woman, the other as said to a group, changing anything in the rest of the sentence that has to be changed. The first two are completed.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1) 'iftah ššababiik. | 'iftahi ššababiik. |
| | 'iftahu ššababiik. |
| 2) min faɖlak, jiib lɟariide ma9ak. | min faɖlik, jiibi lɟariide ma9ik. |
| | min faɖlikum, jiibu lɟariide ma9ikum. |
| 'is'al yuusif. | tfadɖal ma9i. |
| xudhum ba9deen 9al'uteel. | min faɖlak, sakkir ššababiik. |
| xud lwar'a. | 'imsi 9alyamiin. |
| min faɖlak, 'iftah lmaktab. | ba9deen 'is'al. |
| tfadɖal striih. | min faɖlak, 'a9tiini lmajalle. |
| ba9deen, xudni 9almaɖaar. | 'imsi duɖri, wba9deen 'is'al. |

PATTERN SENTENCES

- | | |
|--|---|
| today's newspaper | jariitt lyoom |
| Do you have today's newspaper? | ma9ak jariitt lyoom? |
| Yes. Here it is. | na9am. tfadɖal. |
| key | muftaah |
| the door key | muftaah lbaab |
| Where is the door key? | ween muftaah lbaab? |
| you (m) put it | ɖaɖteeto |
| I don't know where you put it. | maa ba9raf ween ɖaɖteeto. |
| that, which, who | (i)lli |
| I brought it | jibto |
| Where's the book that I brought with me? | ween liktaab lli jibto ma9i? |
| I put it | ɖaɖteeto |
| suit case, brief case | šanta |
| I put it in the brief case. | ɖaɖteeto fiššanta. |
| you know for me | bti9raffi |
| bookstore, library | maktabe |
| Do you know where there's a good bookstore here? | bti9raffi ween fii maktabe mniiha hoon? |
| I find | 'alaa'i |
| to, for | la- |
| the Middle East | ššarq l'awṣaɖ |
| the Near East | ššarq l'adna |

I want to get a good map of the Middle East.	biddi 'alaa'i xaarṭa muiiḥa laššarq l'awṣaṭ.
the Arab Library	lmaktabe l9arabiyye
in it	fiiha
The Arab Library has good maps.	lmaktabe l9arabiyye, fiiha xaraayit muiiḥa.
Where is this bookstore?	ween haadi lmaktabe?
between	been
the hospital	lmustašfa
Between the post office and the hospital.	been lboošṭa wilmustašfa.
you (m) would like	biṭhibb
you (m) come	tiiji
Would you like to come with me?	biṭhibb tiiji ma9i?
why	leeš
Why not?	leeš la'?
One hundred	miyye
Two hundred	miteen
Three hundred	ṭlat miyye
Four hundred	'arba9 miyye
Five hundred	xamis miyye
Six hundred	sitt miyye
Seven hundred	sabi9 miyye
Eight hundred	taman miyye
Nine hundred	tisi9 miyye
One thousand	'alf

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Prepositions

in front of	'uddaam
The car is in front of the house.	ssayyaara 'uddaam lbeet.
Walk in front of me.	'imši 'uddaami.
behind	wara
The chair is behind the door.	lkursi wara lbaab.
Walk behind me.	'imši waraay.
The restaurant is behind you.	lmaṭ9am waraak.

2. Prefix tense verbs : simple prefix

necessary	laazim
tomorrow	bukra
I have to go tomorrow.	laazim 'aruuh bukra.
I want to close the office.	biddi 'asakkir lmaktab.
I want to open the door.	biddi 'aftaḥ lbaab.
We have to go tomorrow.	laazim nruuh bukra.
We want to close the office.	bidna nsakkir lmaktab.
We want to open the door.	bidna niftaḥ lbaab.
You (m) will have to go tomorrow.	laazim truuh bukra.
Do you (m) want to close the office?	biddak tsakkir lmaktab?
Do you (m) want to open the door?	biddak tiftaḥ lbaab?
You (f) will have to go tomorrow.	laazim truuh bukra.

Do you (f) want to close the office ?	biddik tsakkri lmaktab ?
Do you (f) want to open the door ?	biddik tiftaḥi lbaab ?
You (pl) will have to go tomorrow.	laazim truuhū bukra.
Do you (pl) want to close the office ?	bidkum tsakkru lmaktab ?
Do you (pl) want to open the door ?	bidkum tiftaḥu lbaab ?

3. Prefix tense verbs : B-prefix

I'll go tomorrow.	baruuh bukra.
I'll close the office.	basakkir lmaktab.
I'll open the door.	baftaḥ lbaab.
We'll go tomorrow.	binruuh bukra.
We'll close the office.	binsakkir lmaktab.
We'll open the door.	bniftaḥ lbaab.
You (m) will go tomorrow.	bitruuh bukra.
You (m) will close the office.	bitsakkir lmaktab.
You (m) will open the door.	btiftaḥ lbaab.
You (f) will go tomorrow.	bitruuḥi bukra.
You (f) will close the office.	bitsakkri lmaktab.
You (f) will open the door.	btiftaḥi lbaab.
You (pl) will go tomorrow.	bitruuhū bukra.
You (pl) will close the office.	bitsakkru lmaktab.
You (pl) will open the door.	btiftaḥu lbaab.

GRAMMAR

1. Verbs

The verb in Arabic consists of a *stem* and a *subject marker*. The stem indicates the meaning of the verb. The subject marker indicates the doer of the action. For example, the verb *truuh* *you (m) go* consists of the stem *-ruuh* *go*, and the prefixed subject marker *t-* *you (m)*. Similarly, *kaanat* *she was* consists of the stem *kaan-* *was*, and the suffixed subject marker *-at* *she*.

The Arabic verb has two tenses: a *prefix tense*, having subject markers in the form of prefixes, and a *suffix tense*, having subject markers in the form of suffixes. The prefix tense usually indicates present or future time, the suffix tense past time.

In addition to the two tenses, most verbs have a command form.

2. The prefix tense — I

The prefix tense has two forms: *simple prefix* and *B-prefix*. The following shows the forms that have occurred so far.

Most of the prefixes have variants, depending upon whether the underlying stem begins with one consonant or with a consonant cluster. Note that some of the subject markers are a combination of a prefix (for person) and a suffix (for gender or number).

(1) Stem beginning with a single consonant

		<i>simple</i>	<i>B-prefix</i>	
'a-/ba-	<i>I</i>	'aruuh	baruuh	<i>I go</i>
n-/bin-	<i>we</i>	nruuh	binruuh	<i>we go</i>
t-/bit-	<i>you (m)</i>	truuh	bitruuh	<i>you (m) go</i>
t-/bit-...-i	<i>you (f)</i>	truuḥi	bitruuḥi	<i>you (f) go</i>
t-/bit-...-u	<i>you (pl)</i>	truuhū	bitruuhū	<i>you (pl) go</i>

(2) Stem beginning with a consonant cluster

'a-/ba-	<i>I</i>	'aftaḥ	baftaḥ	<i>I open</i>
---------	----------	--------	--------	---------------

ni-/bni-	we	niftah	bniftah	we open
ti-/bti-	you (m)	tiftah	btiftah	you (m) open
ti-/bti-...-i	you (f)	tiftahi	btiftahi	you (f) open
ti-/bti-...-u	you (pl)	tiftahu	btiftahu	you (pl) open

The simple prefix is a dependent form; it occurs when the verb is closely tied in meaning to a preceding word (such as *bidd-want*, *laazim have to*, or another verb). The B-prefix is independent.

One special use of the simple prefix form is to express wish: *'alla ysallimak May God keep you*, *nuškur 'alla Let us thank God*.

3. Demonstratives

The principal demonstratives are: *haada this, that (m)*; *haadi this, that (f)*; *hadoo these, those (pl)*. When they form a unitary construction with a following noun that has the prefix for « the », they may be reduced to unstressed *ha-*. For example:

haada ktaab. This is a book.
haadi xaarṭa. This is a map.
hadoo wlaadi. These are my children.
xood haliktaab. Take this book.
xood halxaarṭa. Take this map.
min ween haliwlaad? Where are these children from?

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

feen ḥaṭṭeet ššanta?	biddak jariide?
feen jariitt lyoom?	feen lmaktabe l9arabiyye?
feen ljariide lli kaanat	feen balaa'i xaarṭa laššarq
9aṭṭaawle?	l'adna?

ma9ak muftaah lbaab? ma9ak xaarṭa laššarq l'awṣaṭ?

2. In the following sentences replace *ljariide* by as many nouns as possible.

feen ḥaṭṭeet ljariide? feen ljariide?
ḥaṭṭeet ljariide 9aṭṭaawle. ljariide miš hoon.

3. In the following sentences replace the various forms of 'uddaam by the appropriate forms of *wara*.

lbooṣṭa 'uddaam l'uteel. lmaṭ9am 'uddaamak.
lmaktabe l9arabiyye 'uddaam ššanta 'uddaami.
lmaṭ9am. šuu haada lli 'uddaamha?
lkursi 'uddaam lbaab. lbooṣṭa 'uddaamkum.

4. Each of the following sentences contains a prefix tense verb in the « I » form. Go through the sentences, replacing the « I » forms by « we » forms, and changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs to be changed. The first two are completed.

(1) *biddi 'aruuh 9albalad.* *bidna nruuh 9albalad.*
(2) *maa ba9raf.* *maa bni9raf.*
laazim 'aruuh bukra *biddi 'asakkir lmaktab.*
9albalad. *laazim 'alaa'i lmuftaah.*
bukra baruuh ma9ak. *maa biddi 'as'al yuusif.*
laazim 'ajjib ššanta ma9i. *bas'al yuusif.*
bajjib ššanta ma9i. *maa ba9raf ween ḥaṭṭeeto.*
biddi 'aftah lmaktab. *biddi 'a9raf ween ḥaṭṭeeto.*
ba9deen baruuh 9almaṭaar. *biddi 'adillo 9almaṭaar.*

5. Each of the following sentences contains a verb in the « you (m) » form. Go through the sentences, replacing the « you (m) » forms by « you (pl) » forms, and changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs to be changed. The first two are completed.

(1) biddak truuh bukra 9assuu'?	bidkum truuhu bukra 9assuu'?
(2) bitruuh ma9hum? laazim truuh ma9i. maa biddak truuh ma9na? laazim tis'al yuusif. laazim tsakkir baab lmaktab.	bitruuhu ma9hum? bti9raf ween haatteeet lmuftaah? laazim ti9raf. biddak tiftah lmaktab?

UNIT 7 • Introductions.

PATTERN SENTENCES

I would like	baħibb
I introduce you	'a9arrfak
Mr.	sayyid
Mr. West, I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Ahmad.	mistir west, baħibb 'a9arrfak 9assayyid 'ahmad.
How do you do? (Lit. We are honored.)	tšarrafna.
journalist	šuhufi
Mr. West is a journalist.	mistir west šuhufi.
before, ago	'abil
He came from America a week ago.	'aja min 'ameerka 'abil 'usbuu9.
he visits	yzuur
our country	blaadna
He wants to visit our country. in this country	biddo yzuur blaadna. bħaliblaad
Do you like it in this country? I like it very much, thank you.	nšaalla mabšuut bħaliblaad? mabšuut ktiir, lħamdilla.
you (m) visited	zurt
places	maħallaat
Have you visited many places? up to now	zurt maħallaat ktiire? lissa or ba9d
Up to now I haven't visited many places.	lissa, maa zurt maħallaat ktiire.

because	li'anno <i>or</i> lees
I was	kunt
busy	mašguul
Because I've been very busy.	li'anno kunt mašguul ktiir.
going to...	rah-, raayih
you stay	tib'a
particle of address	yaa
How long are you going to	'addees rahtib'a hoon, yaa
stay here, Mr. West ?	mistir west ?
I return	'arja9
after	ba9id
I have to return after	laazim 'arja9 ba9id sitt
six months.	tušhur.
knowing	ma9rife
in knowing you	bma9riftak, mma9riftak
I'm honored to have met you,	tšarrafnna mma9riftak, yaa
Mr. Ahmad.	sayyid 'ahmad.
to, for	'il-
honor	šaraf
The honor's mine, Mr. West.	w'ilna ššaraf, yaa mistir west.

Additional vocabulary

consul	'unšul
vice consul	naayib 'unšul, naa'ib 'unšul
counselor	mustašaar
ambassador	safiir
attaché	mulhaq
army attaché	mulhaq 9askari

52 (Unit 7)

naval attaché	mulhaq bahri
air attaché	mulhaq jawwi
commercial attaché	mulhaq tijaari
agricultural attaché	mulhaq ziraa9i
press attaché	mulhaq šahaafi
air force officer	zaabit tayaraan
government official	mwazzaf hukuume
mayor	ra'iis baladiyye
director, manager	mudiir
bank director	mudiir bank

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Prefix tense verbs : simple prefix

He has to go tomorrow.	laazim yruuh bukra.
He wants to close the office.	biddo ysakkir lmaktab.
He wants to open the door.	biddo yiftah lbaab.
She has to go tomorrow.	laazim truuh bukra.
She wants to close the office.	bidha tsakkir lmaktab.
She wants to open the door.	bidha tiftah lbaab.
They have to go tomorrow.	laazim yruuhu bukra.
They want to close the office.	bidhum ysakkru lmaktab.
They want to open the door.	bidhum yiftahu lbaab.

2. Prefix tense verbs : B-prefix

He'll go tomorrow.	biruuh bukra.
--------------------	---------------

(Unit 7) 53

He'll close the office.	bisakkir lmaktab.
He'll open the door.	biftah lbaab.
She'll go tomorrow.	bitruuh bukra.
She'll close the office.	bitsakkir lmaktab.
She'll open the door.	btiftah lbaab.
They'll go tomorrow.	biruuhu bukra.
They'll close the office.	bisakkru lmaktab.
They'll open the door.	biftahu lbaab.

3. Prefix tense stems ending in a vowel

How long are you (m) going to stay here ?	'addees rahtib'a hoon ?
How long are you (f) going to stay here ?	'addees rahtib'i hoon ?
How long are you (pl) going to stay here ?	'addees rahtib'u hoon ?
Go straight ahead (to a man).	'imši duğri.
Go straight ahead (to a woman).	'imši duğri.
Go straight ahead (to a group).	'imšu duğri.

4. Counting : 1-10

One month	šahir
Two months	šahreen
Three months	tlat tušhur
Four months	'arba9 tušhur
Five months	xamis tušhur
Six months	sitt tušhur

54 (Unit 7)

Seven months	sabi9 tušhur
Eight months	taman tušhur
Nine months	tisi9 tušhur
Ten months	9ašar tušhur
One year	sane
Two years	santeen
Three years	tlaat sniin
Four years	'arba9 sniin
Five years	xams sniin
Six years	sitt sniin
Seven years	sab9 sniin
Eight years	tamn sniin
Nine years	tis9 sniin
Ten years	9ašr sniin

5. Suffix tense verbs

I haven't visited many places.	maa zurt maħallaat ktiire.
I've been very busy.	kunt mašguul ktiir.
We haven't visited many places.	maa zurna maħallaat ktiire.
We've been very busy.	kunna mašguuliin ktiir.
Have you (m) visited many places ?	zurt maħallaat ktiire ?
Have you (m) been very busy ?	kunt mašguul ktiir ?
Have you (f) visited many places ?	zurti maħallaat ktiire ?
Have you (f) been very busy ?	kunti mašguule ktiir ?

(Unit 7) 55

Have you (pl) visited many places ?	zurtu mahallaat ktiire?
Have you (pl) been very busy?	kuntu mašguuliin ktiir?
He hasn't visited many places.	maa zaar mahallaat ktiire.
He's been very busy.	kaan mašguul ktiir.
She hasn't visited many places.	maa zaarat mahallaat ktiire.
She's been very busy.	kaanat mašguule ktiir.
They haven't visited many places.	maa zaaru mahallaat ktiire.
They've been very busy.	kaanu mašguuliin ktiir.

GRAMMAR

1. The prefix tense — II

In Unit 6 we listed five of the prefix tense subject markers. The remaining three are given below.

(1) Stem beginning with a single consonant

		simple	B-prefix	
y-/bi-	he	yruuh	biruuh	he goes
t-/bit-	she	truuh	bitruuh	she goes
y-/bi-...-u	they	yruuhu	biruuhu	they go

(2) Stem beginning with a consonant cluster

yi-/bi-	he	yiftah	biftah	he opens
ti-/bti-	she	tiftah	btiftah	she opens
yi-/bi-...-u	they	yiftahu	biftahu	they open

Note that the subject marker for « she » is the same as for « you (m). »

2. Prefix tense stems ending in a vowel

Prefix tense verb stems in which the « he » form ends in a vowel drop this vowel when the endings -i *feminine* and -u *plural* are added. The following two verbs illustrate this.

bib'a	he stays	bilaa'i	he finds
btib'a	she stays	bitlaa'i	she finds
bib'u	they stay	bilaa'u	they find
btib'a	you (m) stay	bitlaa'i	you (m) find
btib'i	you (f) stay	bitlaa'i	you (f) find
btib'u	you (pl) stay	bitlaa'u	you (pl) find
bnib'a	we stay	binlaa'i	we find
bab'a	I stay	balaa'i	I find

Any verb form ending in a vowel lengthens the vowel before a pronoun ending.

bilaa'iini	he meets me
balaa'iik	I meet you (m)
bilaa'uuh	they meet him

3. Stem vowels

The vowel that appears before the last consonant of the stem of a word is called the *stem vowel*. When this vowel is *i* or *u* it is almost invariably dropped before an ending beginning with a vowel :

naazle	staying (f),	for 'naazil-e
haadra	ready (f),	for 'haadir-a
naazliin	staying (pl),	for 'naazil-iin
haadriin	ready (pl),	for 'haadir-iin
bisakkru	they close,	for 'bisakkir-u
bisakkro	he closes it,	for 'bisakkir-o

baaxdo *I take him*, for *baaxud-o
 The stem vowel *a* does not drop :
 bis'alu *they ask*
 bis'alo *he asks him*
 bis'alak *he asks you (m)*
 maktabe *bookstore*
 šarafi *my honor*

4. The suffix tense

The following shows the complete suffix tense forms of two typical verbs.

subject markers

—	<i>he</i>	kaan	<i>he was</i>	fihim	<i>he understood</i>
-at	<i>she</i>	kaanat	<i>she was</i>	fihmat	<i>she understood</i>
-u	<i>they</i>	kaanu	<i>they were</i>	fihmu	<i>they understood</i>
-t	<i>you (m)</i>	kunt	<i>you (m) were</i>	fhimt	<i>you (m) understood</i>
-ti	<i>you (f)</i>	kunti	<i>you (f) were</i>	fhimti	<i>you (f) understood</i>
-tu	<i>you (pl)</i>	kuntu	<i>you (pl) were</i>	fhimtu	<i>you (pl) understood</i>
-t	<i>I</i>	kunt	<i>I was</i>	fhimt	<i>I understood</i>
-na	<i>we</i>	kunna	<i>we were</i>	fhimna	<i>we understood</i>

In discussing the suffix tense, we regard the «he» form as basic; it has no subject marker, and thus shows the bare stem.

Most suffix tense verbs have two variants of the stem: one occurs in the third person forms; the other in the first and second person forms. For example: kaan-/kun-; fih(i)m-/fhim-.

Note that the «I» and «you (m)» forms are identical.

5. The verb prefix rah-

The prefix rah- is used before a simple prefix tense verb to

indicate the future: *will, shall, going to*: 'addees rah'tib'a hoon? *How long are you (m) going to stay here?*

Occasionally the participle raayih *going* (and its feminine and plural forms raayha and raayhiin) are used in place of rah-: 'addees raayhiin tib'u hoon? *How long are you (pl) going to stay here?*

6. The verb 'aja

A verb that may be considered irregular is 'aja *he came*. Following is a complete listing of the forms.

'aja	<i>he came</i>	biiji	<i>he comes</i>
'ajat	<i>she came</i>	btiiji	<i>she comes</i>
'aju	<i>they came</i>	biiju	<i>they come</i>
'ijiit	<i>you (m) came</i>	btiiji	<i>you (m) come</i>
'ijiiti	<i>you (f) came</i>	btiiji	<i>you (f) come</i>
'ijiitu	<i>you (pl) came</i>	btiiju	<i>you (pl) come</i>
'ijiit	<i>I came</i>	baaji	<i>I come</i>
'ijiina	<i>we came</i>	bniiji	<i>we come</i>

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following questions.

mistir west zaabiṭ ṭayaraan?	zaar maḥallaat ktiire?
min feen huwwe?	'addees raḥyib'a hoon?
'addees šarlo hoon?	leeš maa zaar maḥallaat ktiire?
'aja yzuur liblaad?	huwwe mabṣuṭ bhaliblaad?

2. In the following sentences, replace the expression in pa-

rentheses by a different expression denoting an occupation or profession.

mistir west (şuhufi).	(mudiir lbank) kaan ma9
(l'unşul) rahyib'a hoon	'ahmad.
'usbuu9een.	bti9raf (ra'iis lbaladiyye) ?
(ssafiir) laazim yirja9 ba9id	'ahmad (mwazzaf hukuume).
şahreen.	mistir west biddo yzuur
(lmulhaq ljawwi) maşguul	(lmulhaq l9askari).
ktiir.	

3. In each of the following sentences replace the word yoomeen by a different time expression.

'aja min beeruut 'abil	bidna nzuur blaadkum ba9id
yoomeen.	yoomeen.
raayih 'ab'a hoon yoomeen.	ra'iis lbaladiyye bii9i ba9id
lmudiir kaan hoon 'abil	yoomeen.
yoomeen.	laazim 'arja9 ba9id yoomeen.

4. Go through the following sentences, replacing the « he » form of the verb by the « they » form, and changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs changing. The first two are completed.

(1) biddo yruuh 9albalad.	bidhum yruuhu 9albalad.
(2) bya9tiik lmajalle.	bya9tuuk lmajalle.
laazim yruuh bukra.	biddo yiftah lmaktab.
raayih yjiib şşanta ma9o.	maa bi9raf feen haţteetha.
biddo yzuur ssafaara.	biddo ysakkir lmaktab.
maa biddo yruuh. biddo yib'a.	biddo ydill 'ahmad 9al'uteel.
biruuh bukra fissayyaara.	feen bilaa'i xaarta mniiha?
bizuur blaadna ba9id şahir.	biddo ya9tiik ljariide.

birja9 ma9hum.	biddo yib'a filbeet ?
maa biddo yis'al lmudiir.	laazim yirja9 la'ameerka.
biş'al l'unşul.	

5. Go through the sentences of Drill 4, replacing the « he » forms of the verbs by « I » forms.

6. Match each of the following sentences with a sentence containing the appropriate form of kaan. The first two are completed.

(1) 'inte feen naazil ?	'inte feen kunt naazil ?
(2) nihna maşguuliin ktiir.	kunna maşguuliin ktiir.
'ahmad hoon.	hiyye maşguule ktiir.
lmudiir fişşaaam.	feen lmajalle ?
'ahmad miş maşguul.	'ana w'ahmad maşguuliin ktiir.
mistir west fii ameerka.	'ana naazil fii 'uteel plaaza.
liktaab 9aţtaawle.	humme fii 'uteel plaaza.
kiif safirtak ?	humme maşguuliin ktiir.
'inte maşguul ?	feen lxaarta ?
şşanta 9aţtaawle.	

PATTERN SENTENCES

How long are you going to stay here, Mr. West?	'addees rahtib'a hoon, yaa mistir west?
I have to return in a couple of months.	laazim 'arja9 ba9id šahreen.
you have	9indak
Do you have a family in America?	fii 9indak 9eele fii 'ameerka?
my wife	marti
Yes, my wife and children.	na9am. marti wiwlaadi.
how many	kam
child, boy	walad
How many children do you have, Mr. West?	kam walad 9indak, yaa mistir west?
I have	9indi
boy	šabi
two boys	šabiyyeen
girl	bint
I have two boys and a girl.	9indi šabiyyeen wbint.
may he leave for you	yxalliilak
May God leave them for you.	'alla yxalliilak yyaahum.
May God keep you (in reply).	'alla yiḥfazak.
big, old (pl)	kbaar

small, young (pl)	zḡaar
Are they big or small?	kbaar, willa zḡaar?
big, old (m)	kbiir
age, life	9umur
sixteen years	sitt ta9sar sane
The older boy is sixteen years old.	lwalad likbiir, 9umro sitt ta9sar sane.
small, young (m)	zḡiir
And the younger one is ten years old.	wizzḡiir, 9ašr sniin.
And what's the girl's age?	wšuu 9umr lbint?
eleven years	ḥda9sar sane
The girl is eleven years old.	lbint, 9umurha ḥda9sar sane.
visit!	zuur
Please visit us at our home.	tfaḍḍal zuurna filbeet.
Thank you.	šukran.

Alternate expressions

How many children do you have?	kam walad 9indak?
I have one boy.	9indi šabi waahad.
May God leave him for you.	'alla yxalliilak yyaa(h).
May God keep you.	'alla yiḥfazak.
I have one girl.	9indi bint wahde.
May God leave her for you.	'alla yxalliilak yyaaha.
May God keep you.	'alla yiḥfazak.
I have two boys.	9indi šabiyyeen.
I have two girls.	9indi binteen.

I have three boys.	9indi tlat subyaan.
I have three girls.	9indi tlat banaat.
May God leave them for you.	'alla yxalliilak yyaahum.
May God keep you.	'alla yihfazak.
I haven't any children.	maa (fi) 9indi wlaad.
married	mijjawwiz
I'm not married.	'ana miš mijjawwiz.
bachelor	'a9zab
I'm a bachelor.	ana 'a9zab.

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Counting : 11-20

eleven years	hda9sar sane
twelve years	ṭna9sar sane
thirteen years	tlat ṭa9sar sane
fourteen years	'arba9 ṭa9sar sane
fifteen years	xamis ṭa9sar sane
sixteen years	sitt ṭa9sar sane
seventeen years	saba9 ṭa9sar sane
eighteen years	taman ṭa9sar sane
nineteen years	tisi9 ṭa9sar sane
twenty years	9išriin sane

2. Singular and dual of nouns

day	yoom
two days	yoomeen
week	'usbuu9

two weeks	'usbuu9een
girl	bint
two girls	binteen
child, boy	walad
two children, two boys	waladeen
piastre	'irš
two piastres	'iršeen
month	šahir
two months	šahreem
boy	šabi
two boys	šabiyyeen
hospital	mustašfa
two hospitals	mustašfayeen
pound	liira
two pounds	liirteen
year	sane
two years	santeen
week	jum9a
two weeks	jumi9teen
suitcase	šanta
two suitcases	šanitteen
newspaper	jariide
two newspapers	jariitteen
room	'uudā
two rooms	'uutteen

1. Counting

The numbers from 3-19 have one form when they are used independently and a variant form when they immediately precede a counted noun: 3-10 lose the ending -e/-a; 11-19 add -ar: *sittē six, sitt wlaad six children; sitt ʔa9š sixteen, sitt ʔa9šar sane sixteen years.*

The Arabic counting system differs from English in the following ways.

(1) The noun by itself means «one», though it may be followed by *waahad one (m)*, *waḥde one (f)*, according to its gender.

(2) The noun plus the ending -een means «two».

(3) Immediately following the numbers 3-10 the noun is in the plural.

(4) Immediately following any of the other numbers the noun is in the singular.

2. The word kam

The word *kam* *how many* is always followed by an indefinite noun in the singular: *kam walad 9indak? How many children do you have?*

3. The dual

The dual ending -een added to a noun is the usual way of indicating two individuals of a kind. Occasionally the number forms *tween two (m)* and *tinteen two (f)* are used in special expressions.

Nouns ending in -e/-a *feminine* replace the -e/-a by -t before -een *two*. For example: *sane a year, santeen two years; sayyaara a car, sayyaarteen two cars.*

Masculine nouns ending in -i or -a modify the stem before the dual ending. For example: *ṣabi a boy, ṣabiyyeen two boys; mustaṣfa a hospital, mustaṣfayeen two hospitals.*

4. Formation of commands

The command form of the verb is based on the prefix tense «you» form. How it is made depends upon whether the stem is stressed or unstressed. In what follows we give the «you» form of the verb for comparison.

(1) If the stem is stressed, the command is the same as the stem.

«you» form	command	
bitrúuḥ	rúuḥ	<i>go!</i>
bitjīb	jīb	<i>bring!</i>
btistriiḥ	striiḥ	<i>rest!</i>
bitdill	dill	<i>direct!</i>
btitfáḍḍal	tfáḍḍal	<i>please!</i>
bitsákkir	sákkir	<i>close!</i>
bitxáll	xáll	<i>keep!, allow!</i>

(2) If the stem is unstressed, the command has a prefixed 'i- or 'u-, depending on the vowel that follows the subject marker.

btiftaḥ	'iftaḥ	<i>open!</i>
btis'al	'is'al	<i>ask!</i>
btimši	'imši	<i>walk!</i>
btib'a	'ib'a	<i>remain!</i>

If the stress shifts as a result of added suffix material, the 'i- (or 'u-) is frequently dropped. For example.

btis'álni	s'álni	<i>ask me!</i>
btis'alúuni	s'alúuni	<i>ask (pl) me!</i>

The verb *btā9ti* you give has the command form *'a9ti*, as in *'a9tiini give me!*

The verb *btāaxud* you take has the command forms *xood*, *xūd* (m), *xūdi* (f), *xūdu* (pl) *take!*

The verb *btiiji* you come has for its command a suppletion form (i.e. having a different root): *ta9aal* (m), *ta9aali* (f), *ta9aalu* (pl) *come!*

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

'addees rahtib'a hoon?	ħađirtak mijjawwiz?
fii 9indak 9eele?	'addees 9umrak?
'addees 9umr lwalad?	tfadđal zuurna filbeet.
'addees 9umr lbint?	9indak wlaad?
'alla yxalliilak yyaahum.	'addees řarлак mijjawwiz?

2. In the following sentences replace the singular nouns by the corresponding duals. The first two are completed.

(1) ba9tiik 'irř.	ba9tiik 'irřeen.
(2) fii 9indo 'uuđa.	fii 9indo 'uułteen.
kaan hoon 'abil řahir.	biddo majalle.
9indo bint.	laazim 'arja9 ba9id 'usbuu9.
min fađlak, 'a9tiini liira.	kaan fii 'ameerka 'abil sane.

3. Give the Arabic equivalents of the following.

three years	two rooms
two houses	two cigarettes
seven maps	four places

three days	seven years
twenty officers	twenty years
three weeks	two tables
ten days	eighteen officers
six months	fourteen chairs
one year	nineteen cars
eight piastres	four doors
five windows	

4. Go through the following sentences, replacing the singular verbs by the corresponding plurals, and changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs to be changed. The first two are completed.

(1) biddo yzuur blaadna.	bidhum yzuuru blaadna.
(2) maa bididi 'azuuro.	maa bidna nzuuro.
laazim 'arja9 ba9id řahreen.	biddo yzuurna filbeet.
leeř bidha tirja9?	biddak dzuurna?
biddo yirja9 řalbeet.	bithibb blaadna?
maa bi9raf 'ahmad.	'addees rahtib'a hoon?
biddak tirja9 ma9hum?	rahyib'a hoon santeen.
hiyye bidzuurna bukra.	

5. Go through the following sentences, replacing the «we» forms of the verbs by «I» forms, and changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs to be changed. The first two are completed.

(1) laazim nis'al 'ahmad.	laazim 'as'al 'ahmad.
(2) laazim njiib 'ahmad	laazim 'ajiib 'ahmad
ma9na.	ma9i.

bniiji ma9ak.	raayhiin nis'al Imudiir.
ba9deen binruuh	laazim nirja9 ba9id
9almaṭaar.	yooméen.
bidna nzuur ššaam.	bnib'a hoon šahreem.
bidna nruuh ma9ak.	feen binlaa'iik ?
maa bni9raf.	ba9tiik ššanta.

UNIT 9 • Where have you been ?

PATTERN SENTENCES

Good evening.	masa lxeer.
Good evening (in reply).	masa nnuur.
for the safety	9assalaame
Welcome back (an expression said to a person who has just returned from a trip, a hospital, etc.).	lḥamdilla 9assalaame.
May God keep you (in reply).	'alla ysallmak.
absence	ḡeebe
Where have you been ?	ween halḡeebe ?
I was in Damascus.	kunt fiššaam.
longing for you	mištaa'lak
I've missed you very much.	'ana mištaa'lak ktiir.
more, most	'aktar
And I even more.	w'ana bil'aktar.
when	'eemta(n)
you honored	šarraft
When did you get back ?	'eemta šarraft ?
yesterday	mbaarih
I got back yesterday.	tšarrafna mbaarih.
now	halla
free, empty	faaḍi

Are you busy now or are you free ?	maşguul halla, willa faaḍi ?
possible	mumkin
we drink	nişrab
coffee, coffee shop	'ahwe
Could you come with me and drink a cup of coffee ?	mumkin tiiji ma9i nişrab finjaan 'ahwe ?
Why not ?	leeş la' ?

Alternate expressions

I do, I make	'a9mal
I'm free. I haven't a thing to do.	'ana faaḍi. maa fii 9indi şii 'a9mal(o).
believe	saddi'
Believe me, I'm rather busy.	saddi'ni maşguul şwayy.
we have	9inna
visitors	zuwwaar
We have visitors at home.	fii 9inna zuwwaar filbeet.

Additional vocabulary

Egypt	maşir
Iraq	l9iraaq
Jordan	l'urdun
Saudi Arabia	ssu9uudiyye
Turkey	turkiyya
Aleppo	ḥalab
Amman	9ammaan

Baghdad	bağdaad
Beirut	beeruut
Cairo	lqaahira
Dhahran	ḍḍahraan
Jerusalem	l'uds
Tripoli	ṭaraablus

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

I. Feminine T-nouns: free forms and combining forms

How was the trip ?	kiif kaanat ssafra ?
How was Ahmad's trip ?	kiif kaanat safrit 'ahmad ?
His trip was good.	safirto kaanat mniiḥa.
And how was your trip ?	wkiif kaanat safritkum ?
This room isn't free.	haadi l'uuḍa miş faaḍye.
who, whom	miin
Whose room is this ?	'uudit miin haadi ?
This is our room.	haadi 'uuditna.
His room is over there.	'uutṭo hunaaq.
Where is the newspaper ?	feen ljariide ?
Where's today's newspaper ?	feen jariitt lyoom ?
Whose newspaper is this ?	jariidit miin haadi ?
Where's <i>Al-Ahram</i> (a newspaper) ?	feen jariitt l'ahraam ?
His wife is in Beirut.	marto fii beeruut.

2. The word 9ind

How many children do you have ?	kam walad 9indak ?
I have a girl and a boy.	9indi bint wṣabi.
I don't have any children.	maa (fi) 9indi wlaad.
Could you come to my place ?	mumkin tiiji la9indi ?
The children aren't at Yusuf's.	liwlaad miš 9ind yuusif.
They're at Ahmad's.	humme 9ind 'ahmad.

GRAMMAR

1. Feminine T-nouns

Nouns ending in -e/-a *feminine* in their free form have a *combining form* in which the -e/-a is replaced by -(i)t. This combining form is used before the dual ending -een, a pronoun ending, or a following noun in a unitary construction. Nouns that behave this way will be called *feminine T-nouns*. For example : sayyaara *a car*, sayyaarten *two cars*, sayyaarto *his car*, sayyaaritna *our car*, sayyaart ssafaara *the Embassy's car*.

2. The word 9ind

The word 9ind *in the possession of*, in the sense of English *have*, combines with pronoun endings to produce the following forms.

9indi	<i>in my possession, I have</i>
9inna	<i>in our possession, we have</i>
9indak	<i>in your (m) possession, you (m) have</i>
9indik	<i>in your (f) possession, you (f) have</i>

9indkum	<i>in your (pl) possession, you (pl) have</i>
9indo	<i>in his possession, he has</i>
9indha	<i>in her possession, she has</i>
9indhum	<i>in their possession, they have</i>

The negative is maa or maa fi, as in maa (fi) 9indi wlaad. *I haven't any children.*

This word also may mean «at the house of», as in mumkin tiiji la9indi ? *Could you come to my place ?* The negative, with this meaning, is miš, as in liwlaad miš 9ind yuusif *the children aren't at Yusuf's.*

3. Assimilation

Certain consonant clusters that result from the processes of the grammar are affected by *assimilation* : the shift of a sound to match its neighbor. The commoner case is a change in the pronunciation of the first member of the cluster.

Within words

- (1) d becomes t before t : jariitti *my newspaper* (for jariidti).
 - (2) t becomes d before d, z, and j : biddill *you direct* (for bitdill), bidzuur *you visit* (for bitzuur), bidjiib *you bring* (for bitjiib). Occasionally t becomes j before j : mijjawwiz *married* (for mitjawwiz).
 - (3) n may become m before b : jamb *next to* (for janb).
 - (4) b may become m before m : mma9riftak *in knowing you* (for bma9riftak).
 - (5) If one of the consonants is velarized, the velarization extends over the whole cluster: xaariṭṭeen *two maps* (for xaariṭteen), 'uutṭi *my room* (for 'uutṭi from 'uudti).
- These particular assimilations occur within words, and are

consistently marked in the transcription. Other assimilations occur across word boundaries. Following are some examples.

Across word boundaries

(1) t becomes d before j: tlad juma9 *three weeks* (for tlat juma9); occasionally j: tlaj juma9.

(2) š becomes s before ʃ: 'addees ʃarлак hoon? *how long have you been here?* (for 'addees ʃarлак hoon?).

(3) h drops before 9: ruu 9ašmaalak *go to your left* (for ruuh 9ašmaalak).

Assimilations like the above are not uniformly handled by all speakers and are not indicated in the transcription.

It is worth noting that velarization very rarely carries across a word boundary.

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

ʃabaah lxeer.	zurt mahallaat ktiire?
masa lxeer.	mašguul halla, willa faadi?
lhamdilla 9assalaame.	mumkin tiiji ma9i nišrab
ween halgeebe?	finjaan 'ahwe?
'ana mištaa'lak ktiir.	ween kuntu?
'eemta(n) šarraft?	'ana mištaa'ilkum ktiir.
ween kunt?	'eemta(n) šarraftu?
kiif 'ijiit? fiṭṭayyaara,	kiif 'ijiitu? fiṣsayyaara,
willa filbaaboora?	willa fiṭṭayyaara?
kiif kaanat safirtak?	

2. Match each of the following sentences with a command sentence. The first two are completed.

(1) mumkin tis'al mistir	'is'al mistir west.
west?	
(2) mumkin taaxudni	xudni 9assafaara.
9assafaara?	
mumkin tiṭṭah lbaab?	mumkin tsakkir ššubbaak?
mumkin tis'al lmudiir?	mumkin dzuurna filbeet?
mumkin ddiilni 9almaṭaar?	mumkin djiib 'ahmad ma9ak?
mumkin ddiilna 9alboosṭa?	mumkin ta9ṭiini kibriite?

3. Go through Drill 2, replacing the masculine verbs by feminine verbs and then matching each with a command sentence.

4. Go through Drill 2, replacing the masculine verbs by plural verbs and then matching each with a command sentence.

5. Give the Arabic equivalents of the following.

Ahmad's trip	our room	Ahmad's wife
his trip	their room	his wife
my trip	two rooms	my wife
your (m) trip	whose room?	two newspapers
your (pl) trip	today's newspaper	two cigarettes
their trip	his newspaper	two days
Ahmad's room	our newspaper	two offices
his room	her newspaper	two houses
my room	your (m) newspaper	two tables

6. In the following sentences replace the singular verbs by the corresponding plurals, changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs changing. The first two are completed.

(1) biṭhibb ti9mal haada? biṭhibbu ti9malu haada?

(2) 'aja yzuurna mbaarih.	'aju yzuuruuna mbaarih.
biddi 'aşrab 'ahwe.	'aja min beeruut mbaarih.
şuu biddak tişrab ?	'ijiit lahoon min bağdaad.
şuu biddo yi9mal ?	'ajat min 9alab.
maa biddo yişrab 'ahwe.	kaan fii 9ammaan.
whalla, şuu ba9mal ?	kunt fidqahraan.
miin bithibb 'aktar? şşaaam	feen kunt ?
willa beeruut ?	

7. In the following sentences replace 9indi, 9indak, 9indo, and 9indhā by the corresponding plurals, changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs changing. The first two are completed.

(1) şuu fii 9indo ?	şuu fii 9indhū ?
(2) fii 9indhā 9eele fii 'ameerka.	fii 9indhū 9eele fii 'ameerka.
'ana faaḍi. ma fii 9indi şii 'a9mal.	fii 9indo 'uuḍa mniihā.
şuu fii 9indak şii jdiid ?	şuu fii 9indak ?
fii 9indi zuwwaar filbeet.	fii 9indo sayyaara jdiide.
	maa fii 9indi şii jdiid.
	9indak sayyaara ?

UNIT 10 • In a coffee shop.

PATTERN SENTENCES

you order, command	btu'amru
What will you order ?	şuu btu'amru ?
Two coffees.	tneen 'ahwe.
How would you like the coffee ?	kiif biṭhibbu l'ahwe ?
sweet (f)	ḥilwe
plain (invariable adj.)	saada
With sugar or black ?	ḥilwe, willa saada ?
One with sugar and one black.	waahad ḥilwe, wwaahad saada.
Yes, indeed (lit. your command).	'amrak.
beer	biira
Do you have beer ?	fii 9inkum biira ?
I'm sorry. We don't have beer.	mit'assif. maa fii 9inna biira.
no need	balaaş
That's all right. No need for beer.	ma9aleeş. balaaş biira.
bring to us	jibiina.
water	mayy
Please bring us some water.	min faḍlak, jibiina mayy.
With pleasure.	tikram.
May it do you good (said to someone who has just drunk some water).	hanii'an.

May God give you joy 'alla yhanniik.
(in reply).

Alternate expressions

you order	btu'mur
What will you order?	šuu btu'mur?
tea	šaay
One tea.	waahad šaay.
How would you like the tea?	kiif bithibb ššaay?
light.	xafiif
heavy	t'iil
Weak or strong?	xafiif, willa t'iil?
Weak, please.	xafiif, min faḍlak.
he will be	ykuun
sweet	ḥilu
But don't make it too sweet.	bass, balaas ykuun ḥilu ktiir.

Additional vocabulary

cola	koola
hot chocolate	kakaaw
ice cream	buuza
milk	ḥaliib
sugar	sukkar

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Ordering things

One order of coffee.	waahad 'ahwe.
Two orders of coffee.	tneen 'ahwe.
Three orders of coffee.	tlaate 'ahwe.
Four orders of tea.	'arba9a šaay.
Two orders of hot chocolate.	tneen kakaaw.
Three orders of cola.	tlaate koola.
Five orders of ice cream.	xamse buuza.

2. The preposition fii

We came by plane.	'ijiina fiṭṭayyaara.
They came by boat.	'aju filbaaboar.
Please visit us at home.	tfaḍḍal zuurna filbeet.
His wife is in Damascus.	marto fiššaam.
The Arab Library has good maps.	lmaktabe l9arabiyye, fiiha xaraayit muiiḥa.
tourism	siyaaha
The Office of Tourism has lots of newspapers.	maktab ssiyaaha, fii jaraayid ktiire.
They're staying at the Hotel Plaza.	humme naazliin fii 'uteel plaaza.
My wife is in America.	marti fii 'ameerka.
I'm staying in Beirut.	'ana naazil fii beeruut.

1. Ordering things

In ordering things, Arabic uses the independent form of the number followed by a singular noun, e.g. *tneen 'ahwe* *two coffees*. Note that the dual in -een is not used here.

2. The preposition fii

The preposition *fii* *in* is shortened to *fi-* before a noun having the prefix for «the», e.g. *filbalad* *in the town*. Before a pronoun ending it is *fii-*, e.g. *fiihum* *in them*.

3. Roots and patterns

So far in our analysis of Arabic words we have concentrated on prefix and suffix elements. For example: *l-* *the* in *lbeet* *the house*; *-ak* *your (m)* in *wlaadak* *your children*; *-at* *she* in *kaanat* *she was*. It is usually possible to carry the analysis to the *stems* to which these affixes are attached.

Most stems consist of a nucleus of consonants which occur together with various vowel combinations, including sometimes an added extra consonant. For example, *ktaab* *book* consists of the consonant nucleus *ktb* plus long *aa* between the second and third consonants; *naazil* *staying* consists of the consonant nucleus *nzl* plus long *aa* between the first and second consonants and short *i* between the second and third.

This consonant nucleus is called a *root (R:)*, and what is left over is called a *pattern (P:)*. Expressed symbolically, the word *naazil* consists of *R: nzl* + *P: -aa-i-*. The hyphens in the pattern indicate the position of the root consonants relative to the rest of the material.

A root frequently has a general *lexical* meaning that is reflected

in all words containing that root. For example, the root *ktb* has the general meaning of «writing», and this meaning appears in the following words: *katab* *he wrote*, *kaatib* *writer*, *ktaab* *book*, *maktuub* *letter*, *maktab* *writing place (i.e. office)*.

A pattern frequently has a *grammatical* meaning. For example, the pattern *-ii-* (occasionally *-a-ii-*) has the meaning «simple adjective» as in *rxiiš* *cheap*, *t'iil* *heavy*, *jdiid* *new*, *xafiif* *light*.

4. Vowel harmony

Prefix tense verb forms with the stem vowel *u* show a kind of vowel harmony: the vowel of the subject marker is *u*, and when a transition vowel occurs, it is *u* also. The verb *bu'mur* *he orders* illustrates this.

	<i>simple prefix</i>	<i>B-prefix</i>
he	yu'mur	bu'mur
she	tu'mur	btu'mur
they	yu'umru	bu'umru
you (m)	tu'mur	btu'mur
you (f)	tu'umri	btu'umri
you (pl)	tu'umru	btu'umru
I	'a'mur	ba'mur
we	nu'mur	bnu'mur
	<i>command</i>	
(m)	'u'mur	
(f)	'u'umri	
(pl)	'u'umru	

This harmony is regressive, i.e. the following stem vowel *u*

affects preceding vowels. The reverse is not usually true: jum/9teen *two weeks* (and not 'jumu9teen) from jum9a *week*.

DRILLS

- Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

mumkin tiiji ma9i nišrab	min faḍlak, jibilna mayy.
finjaan 'ahwe ?	šuu biḥibb? 'ahwe, willa šaay?
šuu btu'umru ?	biḥibb l'ahwe ḥilwe, willa
kiif biḥibb l'ahwe ?	saada ?
biḥibb 'ahwe, willa šaay ?	hanii'an.
- In each of the following sentences replace the word 'ahwe by a different noun indicating a food or a drink.

kiif biḥibb l'ahwe ?	ma baḥibb l'ahwe ktiir.
fii 9indkum 'ahwe ?	biḥibb l'ahwe ?
mit'assif. maa fii 9inna 'ahwe.	marti maa biḥibb l'ahwe.
min faḍlak, jibilna tneen	min faḍlak, jibli waahad 'ahwe.
'ahwe.	
- Give the Arabic for the following orders.

two coffees	three beers
three colas	one coffee and one tea
four ice creams	two coffees and one tea
one hot chocolate	five beers and two coffees and
three coffees	one cola
one tea	two colas and a beer
- In each of the following sentences replace the form of the verb *kaan was* by the appropriate form of *bikuun will be*. The first two are completed.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) 'ahmad kaan mašguul. | 'ahmad bikuun mašguul. |
| (2) 'ana kunt mašguul ktiir. | bakuun mašguul ktiir. |
| nsaalla ssafra kaanat mniiḥa? | 'ahmad wyuusif, kaanu ma9 |
| 'ana w'ahmad, kunna | lmudiir. |
| mašguuliin ktiir. | 'ahmad, kaan lyoom filbeet. |

- In each of the following sentences replace the singular verb by the corresponding plural, changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs to be changed. The first two are completed.

(1) 'eemta bitkuun faaḍi ?	'eemta bitkuunu faaḍyiin ?
(2) 'eemta bitkuun ḥaaḍir ?	'eemta bitkuunu ḥaaḍriin ?
raayih 'akuun mašguul ktiir.	nšaa'lla bakuun faaḍi ba9id
bikuun faaḍi bukra ?	yoommeen.
bitkuun ḥaaḍir ba9d šwayy ?	

PATTERN SENTENCES

hour, watch	saa9a
Please, what time is it?	min faɖlak, 'addees ssaa9a?
It's six thirty.	ssaa9a sitte wnuşş.
early	bakkiir
That's all right. It's still early.	ma9alees. lissa bakkiir.
work	şuğul
Do you have some work?	fii 9aleek şuğul?
eight o'clock	ssaa9a tamaanye
No, but I have to return home before eight o'clock.	la'. bass laazim 'arja9 9albeet, 'abl ssaa9a tamaanye.
out of order (f)	xarbaane
My watch is out of order.	saa9ti xarbaane.
repairing	taşliih
It needs repairing.	bidha taşliih.
cleaning	tanđiif
It needs cleaning, too.	bidha tanđiif, kamaan.
watchmaker	saa9aati
Where is there a good watchmaker?	ween fii saa9aati mniih?
look, see	şuuf
across from	'baal
Look, there's a good watchmaker across from the Post Office.	şuuf. fii saa9aati mniih, 'baal lboos̥ta.

prices	'as9aar
But how are his prices?	bass, kiif 'as9aaro?
reasonable (f)	ma9'uule
His prices are reasonable.	'as9aaro ma9'uule.

Alternate expressions

she delays	bit'axxir
My watch is losing time.	saa9ti bit'axxir.
she advances	bit'addim
My watch is gaining time.	saa9ti bit'addim.
stopped (f)	waa'fe
My watch has stopped.	saa9ti waa'fe.

Additional vocabulary

alarm clock	saa9a mnabbih
hand	'iid
wrist watch	saa9it 'iid
pocket	jeeb
pocket watch	saa9it jeeb

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Time expressions

It's one o'clock.	ssaa9a wahde.
It's two o'clock.	ssaa9a tinteen.
It's three o'clock.	ssaa9a tlaate.

It's six thirty.	ssaa9a sitte wnuşş.
quarter	rubu9
It's six fifteen.	ssaa9a sitte wrubu9.
third	tult
It's six twenty.	ssaa9a sitte wtult.
except, minus	(i)lla
It's a quarter to six.	ssaa9a sitte (i)lla rubu9.
It's twenty minutes to six.	ssaa9a sitte (i)lla tult.
It's five minutes past six.	ssaa9a sitte wxamse.
It's six thirty-five.	ssaa9a sitte wnuşş wxamse.
It's five minutes to six.	ssaa9a sitte (i)lla xamse.
It's six twenty-five.	ssaa9a sitte wnuşş (i)lla xamse.
come (m)	ta9aal
minute	d'ii'a
Come after one minute.	ta9aal ba9d d'ii'a.
come (f)	ta9aali
time	wa't
Come on time.	ta9aali 9alwa't.
come (pl)	ta9aalu
minutes	da'aayi'
Come after five minutes.	ta9aalu ba9id xamis da'aayi'.

2. The preposition 9ala

We want to go to the market.	bidna nruuḥ 9assuu'.
He wants to go home.	biddo yruuḥ 9albeet.
We're going to the coffee shop.	niḥna raayhiin 9al'ahwe.
I didn't understand you.	maa fhimt 9aleek.
I didn't understand him.	maa fhimt 9alee(h).

Have you some work ?	fii 9aleekum şuḡul ?
Has he some work ?	fii 9alee şuḡul ?
I have a lot of work.	fii 9alayy şuḡul ktiir.
The hotel is on your right.	l'uteel 9ala 'iidak lyamiin.
When are you going to Beirut ?	'eemta raayih 9a(la) beeruut ?
With pleasure (lit. on my eye).	9ala 9eeni.
With pleasure (lit. on my head).	9a(la) raasi.

GRAMMAR

1. The preposition 9ala

The preposition 9ala has two principal meanings : «to,» indicating direction, and «on,» indicating position. It may also have the meaning of «incumbent upon» in certain expressions. The word has four variants.

(1) 9ala, when followed by a word without the prefix for «the» : 9ala yamiinak *to your right*.

(2) 9a-, when followed by a word with the prefix for «the» : 9alyamiin *to the right* ; also, optionally, in the cases of (1) above : 9abeeruut *to Beirut*.

(3) 9alee-, when followed by pronoun endings, (except -y *me*) : 9aleek *on you*.

(4) 9alay-, when followed by -y *me* : 9alayy *on me*.

2. Types of roots

The typical root consists of three consonants in a fixed order.

Changing the order results in a non-existent root or a root with a different meaning. There are four main types of roots :

(1) *Regular*. All the consonants of the root appear in all words containing the root, e.g. *R* : fth *opening* in :

fataḥ *he opened*
faatiḥ *open*
maftuuh *opened*
muftaah *key*

(2) *Doubled*. Essentially like regular roots, but with the last two consonants identical, e.g. *R* : ḥbb *loving* in :

ḥabb *he loved, liked*
ḥabiib *loved one*
maḥbuub *loved*
ḥubb *love*

(3) *Hollow*. The second consonant is w or y, but this consonant is unstable, alternating between w, y, long vowel, glottal stop (ʾ), and nothing, e.g. *R* : zwr *visiting* in :

zaar *he visited*
bizuur *he visits*
zaayir *visiting*
zuwwaar *visitors*
ziyaara *visit*
zurt *I visited*

(4) *Weak*. The last consonant is w or y, and behaves much as in a hollow root, e.g. *R* : b'y *remaining* in :

bi'i *he remained*
bi'ya *she remained*
bib'a *he remains*
baa'i *remaining (m)*
baa'ye *remaining (f)*

Roots that begin with w- and some that begin with glottal stop (ʾ) show alternations somewhat like the hollow and weak roots. For example :

R : wld *begetting* in :
walad *boy, child*
waalid *begetter (i.e. father)*
miilaad *birth*
R : 'xd *taking* in :
'axad *he took*
byaaxud *he takes*
xood *take!*

3. Noun and adjective plurals

Arabic noun and adjective plurals differ from the corresponding English forms in two principal ways : the plural usually sounds quite different from the singular, and the form of the plural is usually not predictable.

It is traditional to divide Arabic plurals into two classes : *sound* and *broken*. There are two varieties of sound plurals : those ending in -aat and those ending in -iin. The broken plurals show more variety ; some grammars list about two dozen kinds, but many of these are quite rare. Some nouns have more than one plural.

Sound plurals in -aat

These frequently correlate with an underlying feminine T-noun in the singular, and for this reason are often called sound feminine plurals. This plural rarely occurs with adjectives.

<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>	
'unṣliyye	'unṣliyyaat	<i>consulate</i>
sayyaara	sayyaaraat	<i>car</i>

saa9a	saa9aat	<i>hour, watch</i>
war'a	war'aat	<i>piece of paper</i>
bint	banaat	<i>girl</i>
mustašfa	mustašfayaat	<i>hospital</i>
maḥall	maḥallaat	<i>place</i>
maṭaar	maṭaaraat	<i>airport</i>
'uteel	'uteelaat	<i>hotel</i>

Sound plurals in -iin

These frequently correlate with singulars that may refer to masculine human beings, and for this reason are often called sound masculine plurals.

mwazzaf	mwazzafiin	<i>official</i>
mulḥaq	mulḥaqiin	<i>attaché</i>
mustašaar	mustašaariin	<i>counselor</i>
ṣuḥufi	ṣuḥufiyyiin	<i>journalist</i>
sane	sniin	<i>year</i>
ḥaaḍir	ḥaaḍriin	<i>ready</i>
naazil	naazliin	<i>staying</i>
faaḍi	faaḍyiin	<i>free</i>
ṭayyib	ṭayybiin	<i>good</i>
mabṣuut	mabṣuutiin	<i>well</i>
mašguul	mašguuliin	<i>busy</i>
mit'assif	mit'assfiin	<i>sorry</i>

Broken plurals

These plurals have the same root as the singular, but a different pattern. They are more common than the sound plural.

kbiir	kbaar	<i>big, old</i>
zḡiir	zḡaar	<i>small, young</i>
rxiiṣ	rxaaṣ	<i>inexpensive</i>
mniiḥ	mnaaḥ	<i>good</i>
suu'	swaa'	<i>market</i>
baab	bwaab	<i>door</i>
walad	wlaad	<i>boy, child</i>
'alam	'laam	<i>pencil</i>
war'a	wraa'	<i>piece of paper</i>
yoom	'ayyaam	<i>day</i>
zaabiṭ	zubbaaṭ	<i>officer</i>
naayib	nuwwaab	<i>deputy</i>
mudiir	mudara(a')	<i>director</i>
ra'iis	ru'asa(a')	<i>head man</i>
'irš	'ruuš	<i>piastre</i>
beet	byuut	<i>house</i>
muftaaḥ	mafatiḥ	<i>key</i>
'usbuu9	'asabii9	<i>week</i>
šubbaak	šababiik	<i>window</i>
maṭ9am	maṭaa9im	<i>restaurant</i>
maktab	makaatib	<i>office</i>
xaarṭa, xariiṭa	xaraayit	<i>map</i>
jariide	jaraayid	<i>newspaper</i>
kursi	karaasi	<i>chair</i>
'ahwe	'ahaawi	<i>coffee house</i>
šahir	'ašhur	<i>month</i>
9eele	9iyal	<i>family</i>
jum9a	juma9	<i>week</i>

'uudā	'uwaḍ	room
ktaab	kutub	book

Occasionally the plural is a suppletion form (i.e. has a different root).

mara	niswaan	woman, wife
------	---------	-------------

Some nouns have a special *counting plural*, used after the numbers 3-10.

šahir	tušhur (in tlat tušhur)	month
yoom	tiyyaam (in tlat tiyyaam)	day

The examples above are for illustration; for complete listings see the vocabulary at the end of the book.

4. Velarization by assimilation

If the root of a word has one or more velarized consonants, the velarization generally carries over to other consonants in the word. We call this *velarization by assimilation*. In the transcription we mark it only under two conditions: when velarization by assimilation affects t, d, s, and only when these form a cluster with a velarized root consonant. The following examples will illustrate this.

root	transcribed	pronounced	
9ty	bta9ṭiini	bṭa9ṭiini	you give me
tyr	maṭaaraat	maṭaaraaṭ	airports
hṭṭ	haṭteet	haṭteet	I put
'wḍ	'uuditna	'uuditna	our room
'wḍ	'uutṭi	'uutṭi	my room
ṣḷḥ	taṣḷiiḥ	taṣḷiiḥ	repairing

ndf	tanḍiif	ṭanḍiif	cleaning
bṣṭ	mabṣuut	mabṣuut	well
ṭdl	ṭfaḍḍal	ṭfaḍḍal	please

DRILLS

- Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.
min faḍlak, 'addees ssaa9a ? fi saa9aati mniiḥ hoon ?
'eemta laazim tirja9 9albeet ? kiif 'as9aaro ?
fi 9aleek suḡul ?
- In each of the following sentences replace the expression ssaa9a xamse by a different time expression.
laazim 'arja9 9albeet 'abl ta9aalu lahoon ssaa9a xamse.
ssaa9a xamse. nšaa'lla baṣuufkum ssaa9a
ta9aal ba9d ssaa9a xamse. xamse.
'aḥmad kaan hoon ssaa9a bakuun hunaak ssaa9a xamse.
xamse.
- Go through the following sentences replacing the noun in parentheses by the appropriate pronoun ending. The first three are completed.
(1) feen haṭteet (ššanta) ? feen haṭteetha ?
(2) feen haṭteetu (ššanta) ? feen haṭteetuha ?
(3) haṭteena (ššanta) hoon. haṭteenaaha hoon.
bi9raf ('aḥmad) ? 'išrab (l'ahwe).
baṣuuf (lmudiir) ba9d šwayy. 'išrab (ššaay).
haṭteet (lmuftaah) 9aṭtaawle. 'is'al ('aḥmad).

mumkin n̄suuf (lmudiir) ?	bukra bazuur (9eelto).
mumkin 'āsuuf (l'uuḍa) ?	bitlaa'i (lxaarṭa) filmaktab.
leeṣ maa zurt ('aḥmad) fii	bidjiib ('aḥmad) ma9ak ?
beeruut ?	feen ('aḥmad) ?
min faḍlak, dill ('aḥmad)	'eemta biddak t̄suuf ('aḥmad) ?
9al'uteel.	

4. Go through the sentences of Drill 3 changing all the singular verbs to plural and replacing the noun in parentheses by the appropriate pronoun ending.

5. Give the following times in Arabic.

1:00	1:05	12:20	2:40
2:15	10:00	11:00	11:15
3:20	12:30	3:15	4:55
6:00	4:00	7:45	10:56
3:40	4:10	12:00	6:20
2:00	3:00	3:02	5:15
9:45	9:30	7:05	6:45
9:00	5:00	8:50	1:12
5:35	7:25	8:35	6:25

Unit 12 • Eating out.

PATTERN SENTENCES

opinion	ra'i
we eat	naakul
What do you say we go eat?	ṣuu ra'yak nruuḥ naakul ?
idea	fikra
That's a good idea.	fikra mniiḥa.
you prefer	bitfaḍḍil
Where do you prefer we go ?	ween bitfaḍḍil nruuḥ ?
she makes a difference	btifri'
It makes no difference to me.	maa btifri' ma9i.
important	muhimm
clean	ndiif
food	'akil
The important thing is to find	lmuhimm nlaa'i maḥall ndiif,
a clean place and good food.	w'akil ṭayyib.
All right, then.	ṭayyib, 'izan.
let us	xalliina
the National Restaurant	lmaṭ9am lwaṭani
Let's go to the National	xalliina nruuḥ 9almaṭ9am
Restaurant.	lwaṭani.
(In the restaurant)	
Welcome! What will you	'ahla wsahla. ṣuu btu'umru ?
order?	
chicken	jaaj

roasted	mħammad
plate	ṣaħin
salad	ṣalaṭa
Please bring me roast chicken and a salad.	min faḍlak, jiblijaaj mħammad, wṣaħin ṣalaṭa.
soup	ṣooraba
Please bring me a bowl of soup.	min faḍlak, jibli ṣaħin ṣooraba.
squash	kuusa
stuffed	maḥṣi
vine leaves	wara' 9inab
And stuffed squash with vine leaves.	wkuusa maḥṣi, ma9 wara' 9inab.
second, other	taani
Do you want anything else?	btu'umru sii taani?
No, thanks.	la'. salaamtak.
Would you like anything to drink?	bithibbu tiṣrabu sii?
arak (an alcoholic beverage)	9ara'
Please bring us two araks.	min faḍlak, jibilna tneen 9ara'.
you want	bitriidu
Do you want anything sweet?	bitriidu sii ħilu?
What do you have?	suu fii 9indkum?
baklava	ba'laawe
kenafeh	knaafe
maamul	ma9muul
There is baklava and kenafeh and maamul.	fii ba'laawe, wiknaafe, wma9muul.

98 (Unit 12)

fruits	fawaakih
Don't you have any fruit?	maa fii 9indkum fawaakih?
of course	ma9luum
Of course we have.	ma9luum, 9inna.
bananas	mooz
apples	tuffaah
grapes	9inab
figs	tiin
There are bananas and apples and grapes and figs.	fii mooz, wtuffaah, w9inab, wtiin.
Bring me some grapes, please.	jibli 9inab, min faḍlak.
Bring me some apples.	jibli 'ana tuffaah.
bill, account	ħsaab
Please give us the bill.	min faḍlak, 'a9tiina liħsaab.

Additional vocabulary

boiled	masluu'
bottle	'anniine
bread	xubz
breakfast	ftuur
broiled	maṣwi
butter	zibde
cheese	jibne
eggs	beed
evening meal	9aṣa
fish	samak
fork	ṣooke
fried	ma'li

(Unit 12) 99

glass	kaas
hors d'œuvres (with drinks)	maaza
ice	talj
juice	9ašiir
knife	sikkiin
meat	lahme
menu	liista
midday meal	ğada
napkin	fuuta
pepper	filfil
rice	ruzz
salt	miliḥ
spoon	ma9la'a
vegetables	xuḍra
wine	nbiid

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Verb phrases

Would you like to go with me?	bithibb truuḥ ma9i ?
What do you say we go eat ?	šuu ra'yak nruuḥ naakul ?
What do you want to drink ?	šuu bitriid tišrab ?
Would you like anything to drink ?	bithibbu tišrabu šii ?
Where do you prefer we go ?	ween bitfaḍḍil nruuḥ ?
He prefers to stay at home.	bifaḍḍil yib'a filbeet.
I'll go to see him tomorrow.	baruuh 'ašuufu bukra.

GRAMMAR

1. Verb phrases

Most English verbs have a general form that can be preceded by *to*, as in *to see*, *to go*, *to stay*. This general form does not specify any particular doer of the action, and is often called the infinitive. The infinitive often appears in phrases together with another verb, as in *I'd like to go to see him*.

The Arabic verb, in contrast to English, has no infinitive ; all verbs indicate the doer of the action. When Arabic verbs occur together in phrases, each verb has its own subject marker. Thus the phrase *šuu bithibb taakul ?* *what would you like to eat ?* is literally « what would you like you eat ? »

The first verb in the phrase may or may not have the B-prefix, depending on what precedes. The second and subsequent verbs have (almost invariably) the simple prefix.

2. Types of patterns

In the Grammar of Unit 10 it was shown that it is usually possible to analyze the stem of an Arabic word as consisting of two elements: a root and a pattern. The root consists of consonants, typically three in number and in a fixed order, having a general lexical meaning. The pattern consists typically of vowels staggered in respect to the consonants of the root. Patterns frequently have a grammatical meaning. Note that neither the root nor the pattern ever occurs alone (compare the *re-* and *-ceive* of English *receive*).

In its simplest form, the pattern consists of one or more vowels and no other material. This will be called the *simple* pattern. For example :

root	pattern	stem	
ktb	-aa-	ktaab	book

9rf	-a-	(bi)9raf	he knows
w'f	-aa-i-	waa'if	stopped
šrf	-a-a-	šaraf	honor

In some cases, a given pattern is associated with one or more specific added features in such a way that it is best to regard the combination as a unit, often with a meaning of its own. Such a combination will be called a *pattern complex*. Among the more common added features are prefixed m-, t-, consonant doubling, and vowel length, including also combinations of these. The following examples illustrate some of the possibilities.

root	pattern complex	stem	
ktb	ma- -a-	maktab	office
šgl	ma- -uu-	mašguul	busy
w'f	-a- -i-	wa''if	stop !
wzf	m-a- -a-	mwazzaf	official
zbt	-u- -aa-	zubbaat	officers
s9d	-aa-a-	saa9ad	he helped
s9d	m-aa-i-	msaa9id	assistant
šrf	-a- -a-	šarraf	he honored
šrf	t-a- -a-	tšarraf	he was honored
nqf	ta- -ii-	tanqiiif	cleaning
'sf	mit-a- -i-	mit'assif	sorry

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

'ahlan wasahlan.	šuu btu'umru ?
kiif haalak ?	šuu fii 9indkum ?
šuu ra'yak nruuḥ naakul ?	šuu bithibbu tišrabu ?

feen bitfaḍḍil nruuḥ ?	maa fii 9indkum biira ?
šuu ra'yak nruuḥ 9almaṭ9am	bithibbu tišrabu šii ma9
lwaṭani ?	l'akil ?
kiif lmaṭ9am lwaṭani ? nqiiif ?	bithibbu kaas 9ara', 'abl l'akil ?
kiif l'akil hunaak ?	bitriidu šii ḥilu ?
feen haada lmaṭ9am ?	

2. In each of the following sentences replace the words in parentheses by a different expression denoting something to eat or drink.

min faḍlak jibli ('anniint	maa baḥibb (lbeed).
nbiid).	biddak (samak), willa (lahme)?
min faḍlak jibilna (tneen	jibli (tuffaah).
9ara').	(rruzz) mniiḥ ktiir.
fii 9indkum (kuusa maḥši) ?	

3. Match each of the following sentences with a sentence beginning with xalliina *let us*. The first two are completed.

(1) binruuḥ 9almaṭ9am.	xalliina nruuḥ 9almaṭ9am.
(2) bnis'al 'aḥmad.	xalliina nis'al 'aḥmad.
bnisrab 'ahwe.	bniftaḥ ššababiik.
binlaa'i maḥall nqiiif.	bnib'a hoon.
binruuḥ naakul.	binsuufu bukra.
binjiib 'aḥmad ma9na.	binruuḥ ma9 'aḥmad.

4. In each of the following sentences replace the singular verb by the corresponding plural. The first two are completed.

(1) šuu bithibb tišrab ?	šuu bithibbu tišrabu ?
(2) 'aja yšuufni.	'aju yšuufuuni.
bithibb truuh ma9i ?	nšaa'lla bitruuḥ dzuuro bukra.
huwwe biḥibb yšuufak.	ba9deen barja9 'aakul.

feen bitfaḍḍil nruuḥ ?	laazim tirja9 tšuufni.
baḥibb 'alaa'i maṭ9am mniiḥ.	bafaḍḍil 'ab'a hoon.
barja9 'ašuufkum ba9d šwayy.	'eemta bitfaḍḍil 'aaji ?
baḥibb 'aaji ma9ak.	'eemta biiḥi yšuufna ?
hiyye biḥibb tšuuf šuu	tfaḍḍal zuurna filbeet.
bi9malu.	baḥibb 'arja9 'ašuufu.
baḥibb 'a9arrfak 9assayyid	ta9aal bukra.
'aḥmad.	'ijjit 'ašuuf lmudiir.
ṭayyib, 'izan. baruuḥ 'as'alo.	tfaḍḍal striiḥ.
bifaḍḍil yib'a filbeet.	

UNIT 13 • Buying some cloth.

PATTERN SENTENCES

Persons: W: Mr. West; A: Ahmad; C: Cloth merchant.

you help	tsaa9id
I buy	'aštri
suit	badle
W: Ahmad, could you help	mumkin tsaa9idni, yaa 'aḥmad,
me buy a suit ?	'aštri badle ?
all, every	kull
pleasure	suruur
A: With pleasure.	bikull suruur.
you want her	biddak yyaaha
What kind of suit do you	šuu lbadle lli biddak yyaaha ?
want ?	
I buy for myself	'aštriili
summer (adj.)	šeefi, f. šeefiyye
winter (adj.)	šatawi, f. šatawiyye
W: I want to buy myself a	biddi 'aštriili badle šeefiyye.
summer suit.	
cloth	'maas
Do you know where I can	bti9raf ween balaa'i 'maas
find some good cloth ?	mniiḥ ?
wait	stanna
A: Please wait a moment. I'll	min faḍlak, stanna šwayy.
go right along with you.	halla baruuḥ ma9ak.

I put on jacket	'albas jakeet
I just want to put on my jacket.	bass biddi 'albas ljakeet.
(In the shop)	
kind, sort you want him	jins biddah yyaa(h)
C: What kind of cloth do you want?	šuu jins li'maaš lli biddak yyaa?
W: I want something for summer.	biddi šii šeeŋi.
choose	na''i
C: Here you are. Choose what you want.	tfaddal na''i lli biddak yyaa.
here is everything	hayy kullši
Here's everything right in front of you.	hayy kullši 'uddaamak.
price meter	si9ir, ḥa'' mitir
A: What's the price per meter? word	šuu si9r lmitir? kilme
C: Do you want the bottom price?	biddak kilme waḥde?
A: Of course.	ma9luum.
I sold it dinar	bi9to diinaar
two dinars	diinaareen

106 (Unit 13)

three dinars	tlat dananiir
C: A little while ago I sold it for two dinars.	'abl šwayy, bi9to bdiinaareen.
for your sake I give it to you	min šaan xaaṭrak ba9ṭiik yyaa(h)
But for your sake I'll give it to you for a dinar and a half.	bass min šaan xaaṭrak, ba9ṭiik yyaa bdiinaar wnuṣṣ.
usually he is necessary for you	9aadataan bilzamak
How many meters do you usually need?	kam mitir 9aadataan bilzamak?
cut for me	'i'ta9li
W: Please cut me three meters.	min faḍlak, 'i'ta9li tlaat mtaar.
C: Blessed (an expression said to someone who has just purchased a new article).	mabruuk.
W: May God bless you (in reply).	'alla ybaarik fiik.

Additional vocabulary

I. Articles of clothing	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plural</i>
blouse	bluuze	-aat
dress	fuṣṭaan	faṣaṭiin.
hat	burneeṭa	baraniiṭ
handkerchief	maḥrame	maḥaarim
necktie	gravaat	gravattaat
shirt	'amiiṣ	'umṣaan
pair of shoes	kundara	kanaadir

(Unit 13) 107

skirt	tannuura	tananiir
socks (pl)		kalsaat
undershirt	'amiiş	'umşaan
	tahtaani	tahtaaniyye
undershorts	kalsoon	-aat

2. Kinds of cloth

cotton	'uṭun
linen	kittaani
silk	ħariir
wool	şuuf

3. Measures

dra' (an arm's length)	draa9
two dra's	draa9een
three dra's	tlat tudru9
yard	yard, pl. -aat
length	tuul
width	9arḍ

4. Seasons

the spring	rrabii9
the summer	şseef
the fall	lxariif
the winter	şşıta
the summertime	şseefiyye
the wintertime	şşatawiyye

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. The suffix -l-

he became	şaar
he became for me	şarli
I've been here a month and a half.	şarli hoon şahr wnuşş.
bring	jiiib
bring to me	jibli
Bring me one beer.	jibli waaħad biira.
I buy	'aštri
I buy for myself	'aštriili
I want to buy myself a new hat.	biddi 'aštriili burneeṭa jdiide.
you give permission	btismaħ
you give permission to me	btismaħli
Will you excuse me ?	btismaħli şwayy ?
stop	wa''if
stop for me	wa''ifli
Stop here for me.	wa''ifli hoon.
I brought	jibt
I brought for you	jibtillak
I brought you the book.	jibtillak liktaab.
you know	bti9raf
you know for me	bti9raflī
Do you know where there's	bti9raflī ween fii maktabe
a good bookstore here ?	mniiħa hoon ?

2. The particle yyaa-

you want him	biddak yyaa(h)
What kind of cloth do you want?	šuu jins li'maaš lli biddak yyaa?
you want her	biddak yyaaha
What kind of suit do you want?	šuu lbadle lli biddak yyaaha?
Choose what you want.	na''i lli biddak yyaa.
I give you it	ba9tiik yyaa(h)
I'll give it to you for three dinars.	ba9tiik yyaa bitlat dananiir.
put them for me	huṭṭilli yyaahum
Put them on the table for me.	huṭṭilli yyaahum 9aṭṭaawle.

GRAMMAR

1. The suffix -li-

The suffix -li- *to, for, on behalf of* is added to verb forms and some other words. The pronoun endings (-i, -ak, -na, etc.) are then added to the -li-, as in jibli *bring to me!* and jibilna *bring to us!* Note that the pronoun ending for «me» is -i (and not -ni).

Most words having a long vowel before the final consonant shorten this vowel when the suffix -li- is added. For example, jiiḥ plus -li becomes jibli.

When the underlying word ends in two consonants, or (optionally) with the subject marker -t *you (m), I*, the -li- has the variant -ill-, as in jibtillak *I brought for you*, haṭṭeetillak (or haṭṭeetlak) *I put for you*.

This suffix has two main uses. One is to indicate the second or indirect object of a verb (i.e. the person or thing indirectly

affected by the action) as in jibli waahad 'ahwe *bring me a coffee*. The other use is to indicate the person in regard to whom the statement is being made, as in bti9raffi ween fii saa9aati mniih hoon? *do you know for me where there's a good watchmaker here?* In this second use it is frequently not translated in the English equivalent.

2. The particle yyaa-

This particle cannot be translated; it is, so to speak, an «empty» word that serves as a support for a pronoun ending. The forms are as follows:

yyaa(h)	him
yyaaha	her
yyaahum	them
yyaak	you (m)
yyaaki	you (f)
yyaakum	you (pl)
yyaani	me
yyaana	us

Note that the pronoun ending for «me» is -ni (and not -y).

The particle yyaa- plus a pronoun ending is used in expressions involving two pronoun endings that go with a single verb or verb-like word. Arabic cannot have two pronoun endings attached to one word, and if the expression requires two, then one goes with the verb or verb-like word, and the other goes with yyaa-.

3. Suffix tense verb classes — I

There are four main classes of suffix tense verbs, some with subdivisions: Regular, Doubled, Hollow, and Weak. In what follows we discuss the Regular class. The remainder will be discussed in the Grammar of Unit 14.

(1) *Regular*. The examples are : 'addam *he advanced*, saa9ad *he helped*, sa'al *he asked*, fihim *he understood*.

he	'addam	saa9ad	sa'al	fihim
she	'addamat	saa9adat	sa'lat	fihmat
they	'addamu	saa9adu	sa'alu	fihmu
you (m)	'addamt	saa9att	sa'alt	fhimt
you (f)	'addamti	saa9atti	sa'alti	fhimti
you (pl)	'addamtu	saa9attu	sa'altu	fhimtu
I	'addamt	saa9att	sa'alt	fhimt
we	'addamna	saa9adna	sa'alna	fhimna

The verbs of this class have in the «he» form a stem that ends in a single consonant preceded by a short vowel, either *a* or *i* (*u* does not occur).

The short *a* drops before the subject marker -at *she* (e.g. sa'lat), unless it is «protected.» It may be protected in two different ways : by an immediately preceding consonant cluster (e.g. 'addamat) or by a preceding long vowel (e.g. saa9adat).

In the fihim type, the second short *i* drops before subject markers beginning with a vowel (e.g. fihmat, fihmu), and the first short *i* drops before subject markers beginning with a consonant (e.g. fhimt, fhimna).

Most of the verbs of this class have regular roots, though doubled and hollow roots occur.

Like 'addam (bi'addim) *advance*:

'axxar	(bi'axxir)	<i>delay</i>
faqqal	(bifaqqil)	<i>prefer</i>
sadda'	(bisaddi')	<i>believe</i>
sakkar	(bisakkir)	<i>close</i>
sallam	(bisallim)	<i>keep safe, greet</i>

šarraḥ	(bišarriḥ)	<i>honor</i>
wa''af	(biwa''if)	<i>stop</i>
9arraḥ	(bi9arriḥ)	<i>introduce</i>
tfaqqal	(bitfaqqal)	<i>be kind enough to</i>
tsarraḥ	(bitšarraḥ)	<i>be honored</i>

Like saa9ad (bisaa9id) *help* :

baarak	(bibaaarik)	<i>bless</i>
--------	-------------	--------------

Like sa'al (bis'al) *ask* :

'aṭa9	(bi'ṭa9)	<i>cut</i>
'akal	(byaakul)	<i>eat</i>
'amar	(bu'mur)	<i>order</i>
'axad	(byaaxud)	<i>take</i>
fara'	(bifri')	<i>make a difference</i>
fataḥ	(biftaḥ)	<i>open</i>
ḥafaz	(biḥfaz)	<i>keep</i>
samaḥ	(bismaḥ)	<i>permit</i>
šakar	(buškur)	<i>thank</i>

Like fihim (bifham) *understand* :

libis	(bilbas)	<i>dress</i>
lizim	(bilzam)	<i>be necessary</i>
riji9	(birja9)	<i>return</i>
širib	(bišrab)	<i>drink</i>
9imil	(bi9mal)	<i>do</i>
9irif	(bi9raf)	<i>know</i>

The preceding includes all Regular verbs that have occurred in Units 1-13, with the exception of tikram *with pleasure*. This verb has only three forms : tikram, tikrami, tikramu.

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

mumkin tsaa9idni 'aštri	šuu jins li'maaš lli biddak
badle ?	yyaa(h) ?
šuu lbadle lli biddak yyaaha?	'addees ha" ddraa9 ?
biddak badle seefiyye, willa	kam yard 9aadataan
šatawiyye ?	bilzamak ?
bti9raf ween balaa'i 'maaš	mabruuk.
mniih ?	

2. In each of the following sentences replace the word in parentheses by an expression denoting a different article of clothing.

biddi 'aštriili (badle).	mumkin tsaa9idni 'aštri
šuu si9r (l'amiš) ?	(jakeet) ?
fii 9indkum (baraniit) ?	fii 9indkum ('umšaan) ?

3. In each of the following sentences replace -lak for you (m) by -lkum for you (pl). The first two are completed.

(1) bajiblak lbadle bukra.	bajibiilkum lbadle bukra.
(2) ba'ta9lak tlaat mtaar.	ba'ta9ilkum tlaat mtaar.
biddak 'aštriilak šii	bana"iilak šii mniih.
mnilbalad ?	bašufak lbeet.
ba9raflak saa9aati mniih.	ba'sallak yuusif.

4. Go through the sentences of Drill 3 replacing -lak for you (m) by -lo for him.

5. Go through the following sentences adding the following to the verb forms :

-li for me

-lna for us

The first two are completed for -li for me.

(1) jiiib tneen 'ahwe.	jibli tneen 'ahwe.
(2) 'ištri badle.	'ištriili badle.
'i'ta9 mitir wnuşş.	bukra bijjiibu lbadle.
'iftaḥ lbaab.	na"i badle mniih.
xud lbadle.	'eemfa bitšuuf lbeet ?
šuuuf 'addees ssaa9a.	bti9raf saa9aati mniih ?
bištri sagaayir.	wa"if hoon.

6. Match each of the following sentences with a sentence beginning with the appropriate form from the following list. The first two are completed.

xalliini let me	xallii(h) let him
xalliina let us	xalliha let her
	xalliihum let them
(1) bas'alhum.	xalliini 'as'alhum.
(2) bnišrab 'ahwe.	xalliina nišrab 'ahwe.
basakkir lbaab.	baštri badle.
binruuḥ 9almaṭ9am lwaṭani.	bnib'a hoon.
bajiibo ma9i.	bnistanna 'aḥmad.
biftaḥ ššanta.	birauḥu ma9 'aḥmad.
bnistriih halla.	bijju bukra.
bidill 'aḥmad 9al'uteel.	bisaa9du 'aḥmad.
bana"i lli biddi yyaa(h).	btis'alo.
bib'u hoon.	btis'alni.

7. In each of the following sentences replace the word in parentheses by the appropriate form of *yyaa-* plus pronoun ending. The first two are completed.

(1) ba9tiik (ljariide).	ba9tiik yyaaha.
(2) başufak ('ahmad).	başufak yyaa(h).
bajiblak (lbadle) bukra.	huttili (ssagaayir) 9aŋaawle.
baş'allak (yuusif).	'alla yxalliilak (wlaadak).
striili (ljakeet).	'a9tiini (Imuftaah).
ftahli (lbaab).	jibli (l'umşaan).

UNIT 14 • At the tailor's.

PATTERN SENTENCES

Persons: W: Mr. West; A: Ahmad; R: Rashed.

tailor	xayyaat
W: Now, Ahmad, I want you to find me a good tailor.	halla, yaa 'ahmad, biddi yyaak tlaa'iili xayyaat mniih.
close to	'ariib min
far from	b9iid min
station	mhaŋa
A: I know a good tailor near the station.	ba9raflak xayyaat mniih, 'ariib min limhaŋa.
W: Are you free to go now?	faadi nruuh halla?
A: Certainly. Certainly.	ma9luum. ma9luum.

(At the tailor's)

A: Hello, Sayyid Rashed.	marhaba, yaa sayyid raaşid.
R: Hello, Sayyid Ahmad.	marhabteen, sayyid 'ahmad.
Welcome. You honor us.	'ahlan wasahlan. şarraftuuna.
A: We are honored (in reply).	tşarrafna. kiif haalak
How are you these days?	haliyyaam?
R: Let us thank God. Not bad.	nuşkur 'alla. miş baŋa.
A: I'd like to introduce you to Mr. West.	baħibb 'a9arrfak 9ala mistir west.
Mr. West is a journalist from America.	mistir west şuhufi min 'ameerka.

R: I'm honored. You're very welcome.
 prosperous, successful

A: How's business?
 Prosperous?

R: Well, it's not very good.
 business
 people
 money

Business is at a standstill, and people haven't any money.
 service

Now, can I do anything for you?
 piece

A: Why, yes. We have a piece of cloth with us.
 cut out a garment

And Mr. West wants you to cut a suit out of it for him.

R: Welcome. With pleasure.
 color

It's a very nice color.
 I take
 measurement

If you please, I'll take your measurement, Mr. West.

tsarraafna, 'ahlan wasahlan.
 mwaffa'
 kiif suǵlak? n̄saalla mwaffa'?
 saddi', miš ktiir mniih.
 'ašǵaal
 naas
 maṣaari
 l'ašǵaal waa'fe, winnaas maa fii ma9ha maṣaari.
 xidme
 halla, btu'umru šii xidme?
 ša'fe
 saddi'. fii ma9na ša'fit
 'maas.
 faṣṣal bifaṣṣil
 wmistir west, biddo tfaṣṣillo
 yyaaha badle
 'ahlan wasahlan. bikull suruur.
 loon
 loonha ktiir hilu.
 'aaxud
 'yaas
 tfaḍḍal 'aaxud 'yaasak, yaa mistir west.

A: How much are you going to charge for it?
 as much as, whatever

R: Whatever you want.
 it means, that is, well...

A: Well, how much?
 as much as, as

R: As much as I charged you last month.

A: All right.
 to my place
 Monday
 fitting

R: (To Mr. West) Could you come here Monday to have a fitting?
 what, which, any
 be convenient, be
 suitable

W: What time is convenient for you?

R: Any time after five o'clock. (To one of his boys) Zaki, go get us three coffees.
 necessary
 bother
 yourself
 effendi (a term of address)

'addees rahtaaxud 9aleecha?
 'add maa
 'add maa bitriid.
 ya9ni
 ya9ni, 'addees?
 mitil maa
 mitil maa 'axatt minnak 'abil šahir.
 ṭayyib mniih.
 la9indi
 yoom ttineen
 proova
 mumkin tiiji la9indi yoom ttineen, taaxud proova?
 'ayy
 naasab binaasib
 'ayy wa't binaasbak?
 'ayy wa't ba9d ssaa9a xamse.
 yaa zaki, ruuh jibilna tlaate
 'ahwe.
 daruuri
 ḡallab biḡallib
 ḡaalak
 'afandi

A : It's not necessary to bother yourself, Rashed Effendi.
trouble, bother
at all (with negative)

R : It's no trouble at all. You're very welcome.

A : & W : Always. (Expression said after drinking coffee and returning the cup.)

R : Two healths (in reply).

mis daruuri tǧallib haalak,
yaa raasid (')afandi.
ǧalabe
wala
maa fii wala ǧalabe. 'ahlan
wasahlan fiikum.
daayme.
shaḥteen.

(N. B. The expression daayme is not used if there is misfortune in the family of the host.)

Additional vocabulary

1. Days of the week

Sunday	(yoom) l'ahad
Monday	(yoom) ttineen
Tuesday	(yoom) ttalaata
Wednesday	(yoom) l'arba9a
Thursday	(yoom) lxamiis
Friday	(yoom) ljum9a
Saturday	(yoom) ssabt

2. Color adjectives

	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>plural</i>
black	'aswad	sooda	suud
blue	'azra'	zar'a	zuru'
green	'axḍar	xaḍra	xuḍur
red	'aḥmar	ḥamra	ḥumur
white	'abyaḍ	beeḍa	biid
yellow	'aṣfar	ṣafra	ṣufur
brown	binni	binniyye	binniyyiin
gray	ramaadi	ramaadiyye	ramaadiyyiin

3. Sewing needs

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plural</i>
button	zirr	zraar
needle	'ibre	'ubar
pin	dabbuus	dababiis
scissors	m'aṣṣ	m'aṣṣaat
thimble	kuṣṭbaan	kaṣaatbiin
thread	xeeṭ	xiiṭaan

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Noun annexion

the newspaper of today	jariitt lyoom
Who took today's newspaper ?	miin 'axad jariitt lyoom ?

don't forget	laa tinsa
the key of the door	muftaah lbaab
Don't forget to bring the door key with you.	laa tinsa djiib ma9ak muftaah lbaab.
the office of tourism	maktab ssiyaaha
Go to the Office of Tourism.	ruuh 9amaktab ssiyaaha.
the head man of the municipality	ra'iis lbaladiyye
Do you know the new mayor?	bti9raf ra'iis lbaladiyye jjdiid?
the age of your daughter	9umur bintak
How old is your small daughter?	šuu 9umur bintak zzgiire?
the kind of cloth	jins li'maaš
What kind of cloth do you want?	šuu jins li'maaš lli biddak yyaa(h)?
the car of whom	sayyaarit miin
Whose car is this?	sayyaarit miin haadi?
an official of a government	mwazzaf hukuume
Mr. Haddad is a government official.	ssayyid haddaad mwazzaf hukuume.
a piece of cloth	ša'fit 'maaš
We have a piece of cloth with us.	fii ma9na ša'fit 'maaš.
an officer of aviation	zaabiṭ ṭayaraan
Mr. West was an air force officer.	mistir west kaan zaabiṭ ṭayaraan.

the head man of the office of tourism	ra'iis maktab ssiyaaha
Do you know the head of the Office of Tourism?	bti9raf ra'iis maktab ssiyaaha?

GRAMMAR

1. Noun annexion

A frequent construction in Arabic is one consisting of two or more nouns in a closely-knit arrangement called *annexion*. This is a translation of the Arabic grammatical term '*iḍāʿaḥ*'. An example of annexion is the noun *mwazzaf official* and the noun *hukuume government* in the phrase *mwazzaf hukuume a government official*.

The annexion construction has the following special characteristics :

(1) The prefix for «the,» or a pronoun ending, may occur only once in the construction, and then only with the last noun. For example, with *maktab office* and *mudiir director* in that order we have the following possibilities : *maktab mudiir a director's office* ; *maktab lmudiir the director's office* ; with a pronoun ending, *maktab mudiirna our director's office*.

(2) Each noun «governs» the immediately following noun, which is «dependent.» All feminine T-nouns in a governing position have the combining form in -(i)t. For example, *maktabe library* and *mudiir director* combine as *maktabt lmudiir the director's library*.

(3) If the last noun is definite (i.e. has the prefix for «the,» or a pronoun ending, or belongs to the class called proper nouns), the construction as a whole is grammatically definite ; otherwise it is grammatically indefinite. For example, *9umur bintak the age*

of your daughter and sayyaarit 'ahmad Ahmad's car, are definite ; ša'fit 'maas a piece of cloth is indefinite.

(4) An accompanying adjective follows the construction and modifies only one of the nouns. For example, 9umur bintak zzgiire the age of your small daughter, sayyaarit 'ahmad jjdiide Ahmad's new car, and ša'fit 'maas hilwe a nice piece of cloth.

In meaning, the Arabic annexion phrase is the equivalent of various constructions in English: constructions with the possessive, as in the girl's age ; constructions with «of,» expressing a similar relation, as in the age of the girl ; noun phrases, as in the door-key (= the key of the door).

2. Suffix tense verb classes — II

In the Grammar of Unit 13 we discussed the Regular class. In what follows we discuss the remaining three classes: Doubled, Hollow, and Weak.

(1) *Doubled.* The example is dall he directed.

he	dall
she	dallat
they	dallu
you (m)	dalleet
you (f)	dalleeti
you (pl)	dalleetu
I	dalleet
we	dalleena

The verbs of this class have in the «he» form a stem that ends in a double consonant preceded by short *a*.

Before subject markers beginning with a consonant this stem is «extended» by -ee- (e.g. dalleet, dalleena).

Most of these verbs have doubled roots.

Like dall (bidill) direct :

ħabb	(biħibb)	like, love
ħaṭṭ	(biħuṭṭ)	put

(2) *Hollow.* The examples are : šaaf he saw, jaab he brought, staraah he rested.

he	šaaf	jaab	staraah
she	šaafat	jaabat	staraahat
they	šaafu	jaabu	staraahu
you (m)	šuft	jibt	staraht
you (f)	šufti	jibti	starahti
you (pl)	šuftu	jibtu	starahtu
I	šuft	jibt	staraht
we	šufna	jibna	staraḥna

The verbs of this class have in the «he» form a stem that ends in a single consonant preceded by long *aa*.

Before subject markers beginning with a consonant this long *aa* is replaced by a short vowel (e.g. šuft, šufna).

The replacement short vowel is *u* if the corresponding prefix tense has long *uu* (e.g. šaaf bišuuf) ; it is *i* if the corresponding prefix tense has the simple pattern -ii- (e.g. jaab bijii) ; it is *a* if the corresponding prefix tense has a pattern complex (e.g. staraah bistriih).

All these verbs have hollow roots.

Like šaaf (bišuuf) see :

kaan	(bikuun)	be
raah	(biruuḥ)	go
zaar	(bizuur)	visit

Like jaab (bijii) bring :

baa9	(bibii9)	sell
šaar	(bišiir)	become

Note: Omitted is the suffix tense of biriid *want*; its occurrence is rare.

(3) *Weak*. The examples are: maša *he walked*, bi'i *he stayed*:

he	maša	bi'i
she	mašat	bi'yat
they	mašu	bi'yu
you (m)	mašeet	b'iit
you (f)	mašeeti	b'iiti
you (pl)	mašeetu	b'iitu
I	mašeet	b'iit
we	mašeena	b'iina

The verbs of this class have in the «he» form a stem that ends in a vowel, -a or -i.

The -a drops before subject markers beginning with a vowel (e.g. mašat, mašu), and is replaced by -ee- before subject markers beginning with a consonant (e.g. mašeet, mašeena).

The -i becomes y before subject markers beginning with a vowel (e.g. bi'yat, bi'yu) and -ii- (with loss of the first i) before subject markers beginning with a consonant (e.g. b'iit, b'iina).

All these verbs have weak roots.

Like maša (bimši) *walk*:

'a9ta	(bya9ti)	<i>give</i>
hanna	(bihanni)	<i>give joy</i>
kaffa	(bikaffi)	<i>be enough</i>
laa'a	(bilaa'i)	<i>find, meet</i>
na''a	(bina''i)	<i>choose</i>
stanna	(bistanna)	<i>wait</i>

stara (bištri) *buy*

xalla (bixalli) *keep, allow*

Omitted is the suffix tense of the verb 'aja biiji *come*. This verb is somewhat irregular; the forms are given in the Grammar of Unit 7.

3. Prefix tense of 'axad and 'akal.

The prefix tense forms of 'axad *take* and 'akal *eat* lose the glottal stop (') and have a stem beginning with long aa.

he	byaaxud	yaaxud
she	btaaxud	taaxud
they	byaaxdu	yaaxdu
you (m)	btaaxud	taaxud
you (f)	btaaxdi	taaxdi
you (pl)	btaaxdu	taaxdu
I	baaxud	'aaxud
we	bnaaxud	naaxud

The command is xood, xud (m), xudi (f), xudu (pl). The shorter form xud is used when a transition vowel is present. For example, xood haada *take this!* as against xud iljariide *take the newspaper!*

The verb 'akal *eat* behaves the same way: byaakul, btaakul, yaakul, taakul, etc. The command is kool, kul, kuli, kulu.

Other verbs that have a glottal stop as the first consonant of the root do not behave this way. For example, ba'mur *I order*, ba'ta9 *I cut*.

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

bti9raffi ween fii xayyaat	b'addees baa9ak lmitir ?
mniih ?	mumkin 'aaxud 'yaasak ?
kiif 'as9aaro ?	mumkin tiiji la9indi yoom
faadi nruuh halla 9ind	ssabt taaxud proova ?
lxayyaa ?	'ayy wa't binaasbak ?
kiif su9lak ?	miš daruuri t9allib haalak.
min ween stareet hali'maas ?	

2. In the following sentences replace yoom ssabt by different days of the week.

mumkin tiiji la9indi yoom	raayih yzuurna yoom ssabt.
ssabt ?	sufto fii beeruut yoom ssabt.
raasid kaan hoon yoom	šuu ra'yak nruuh 9al'uds yoom
ssabt.	ssabt ?

3. In each of the following sentences replace the suffix tense «I» form of the verb by the suffix tense «we» form. The first two are completed.

(1) 'axatt lbadle min 9ind	'axadna lbadle min 9ind
lxayyaa.	lxayyaa.
(2) stareet lbadle min	stareena lbadle min
beeruut.	beeruut.
'akalt hoon mbaarih.	lissa ma bi9t lbeet.
fataht ššababiik.	jibt kullši ma9i.
maa 'axatt l'umšaan.	haŋteet l'araayid hoon.
'axatt lbadle.	maa xalleeto yruuh 9al9iraaq.

rji9t min beeruut yoom
 ttalaata.
 fhimt kullši.
 sakkart lmaktabe.
 saa9att 'ahmad.
 ruht 9abeeruut yoom l'um9a.
 zurt fiiha maħallaat ktiire.
 kunt fiššaan kamaan.
 'ahmad sufto fii haalab.

laa'cet beet mniih.
 stareet lbadle min 9ind raasid.
 nsiit 'as'alak 9anno.
 nsiit 'asakkir lmaktab.
 'iijit ma9 raasid.
 'iijit fii sayyaarto.
 kunt 9indak yoom l'arba9a.
 šarli yoomeen maa suftak.

4. In each of the following sentences replace the suffix tense «he» form of the verb by the suffix tense «she» form. The first two are completed.

(1) maa sa'al 'ahmad.	maa sa'lat 'ahmad.
(2) fihim kullši.	fihmat kullši.
lees fatah lbaab ?	feen haŋt lburneeta ?
'axad ssayyaara.	laa'a beet mniih ?
'akal ktiir.	maa xallaa yruuh 9al9iraaq.
riji9 yoom l'um9a.	štara badle jdiide.
sakkar libwaab ?	nisi yis'alni.
saa9ad 'ahmad.	nisi ysakkir ššubbaak.
raah 9alimhaŋta.	kiif 'aja ?
zaar l'uds.	'aja ma9ak ?
kaan fii 'ameerka 'abil	'aja zaarni filqaahira.
santeen.	'eemtan šaaf raasid ?
maa baa9 lbeet.	jaab kullši ma9o.

5. Go through the sentences of Drill 4 replacing the suffix tense «he» forms of the verbs by «they» forms. For example :

(1) maa sa'al 'ahmad. maa sa'alu 'ahmad.
(2) fihim kullsi. fihmu kullsi.

6. In each of the following sentences replace the prefix tense verb forms by the corresponding suffix tense forms. The first two are completed.

(1) leeš maa btis'al yuusif ? leeš maa sa'alt yuusif ?
(2) raayih dzuur raasid ? zurt raasid ?
bisaagidni bkullsi. hiyye bitkuun filbeet ssaa9a
fii 'ayy mat9am rahtaakul ? sitte.
rahyaxud minni tlat raayhiin nzuur 'ahmad.
dananiir. miin bijib raasid hoon ?
'ayy saa9a raayhiin tirja9u binxalli ssayyaara ma9
9a'uteel ? 'ahmad.
basaa9id raasid. bištriili badle jdiide.
baruuh ma9hum yoom nšaa//a bilaa'i šuğul.
ttineen.

7. Give the English equivalents of the following Arabic noun annexions.

jariitt lyoom	mustašaar ssafaara
muftaah ššanta	safrīt 'ahmad
maktab lmudiir	mwazzaf hukuume
si9r lmitir	mwazzaf lhukuume
9umr lbint likbiire	naa'ib 'unşul
9umur bintak	mudiir bank
maktab ssiyaaha	zaabiṭ ṭayaraan

8. In each of the following sentences replace the expression in parentheses by a pronoun ending. The first two are completed.

(1) haadi saa9it ('ahmad) ?	haadi saa9to ?
(2) šuu si9r (lbadle) ?	šuu si9irha ?
beet (lmudiir) hunaak.	šuu 9umr (lbint) ?
šuft sayyaarit (raasid) hoon ?	kiif šuğul (raasid) ?
kiif kaanat safrīt (yuusif) ?	kiif haal (wlaadak) ?
feen beet (ssayyid raasid) ?	beet (ssafiir) 'ariib min hoon.
šuu 9umr (lwalad) ?	

PATTERN SENTENCES

speak	ħaka biħki
You speak Arabic well,	btiħki 9arabi mniiħ, yaa
Mr. West.	mistir west.
Well, I speak a little bit.	ya9ni. baħki šwayy.
tell	'aal bi'uul
learn	t9allam bit9allam
Tell me, where did you learn	'ulli. feen t9allamt l9arabi ?
Arabic ?	
university	jaam(i)9a
I learned it in an American	saddi'. t9allamto fii jaam9a
university.	'ameerkaaniyye.
seem, appear	zahaar biẓhar
school	madrased, pl. madaaris
teach	9allam bi9allim
It seems that you have a lot of	biẓhar fii 9indkum madaaris
schools that teach Arabic.	kiiire bit9allim 9arabi.
currently	9am-
be concerned	ħtamm biħtamm
Yes, they're very concerned	na9am. 9ambiħtammu ktiir
these days.	haliyyaam.
read	'iri bi'ra
write	katab buktub
Do you read and write, too ?	bti'ra wiħtuktub kamaan ?
reading	'raay(e)

Well, I'm not so bad in reading.	ya9ni. fili'raay miš baṭṭaal.
difficulty	š9uube
writing	ktaabe
But I have difficulty in writing.	bass 9indi š9uube filiktaabe.
teacher, professional man,	'ustaaz
maestro	
Who's the teacher that taught	miin l'ustaaz lli 9allamak ?
you ?	
an Arab	'ibin 9arab
An Arab or an American ?	'ibin 9arab, willa 'ameerkaani?
An Arab.	'ibin 9arab.
name	'isim
What's his name ?	šuu 'ismo ?
His name's Abdallah Salem.	'ismo 9abda//a saalim.
Do you know him ?	bti9rafo ?
hearing, having heard	saami9
I've heard about him.	saddi'. saami9 9anno.
personally	šaxšiyyan
But I don't know him	bass, maa ba9rafo šaxšiyyan.
personally.	
study	daras budrus
How long have you been	'addees šarлак btudrus 9arabi ?
studying Arabic ?	
approximately	ta'riiban
About two years.	ta'riiban santeen.

Additional vocabulary

language	luġa pl. -aat
dialect	lahje pl. -aat
colloquial (Arabic)	llugħa l9aammiyye or llugħa ddaarje
Classical (Arabic)	llugħa lfuṣṣa
English	'ingliizi
French	fransaawi
German	'a/maani
Italian	tilyaani
Russian	ruusi
Spanish	sbanyooli

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Negative commands

don't go	laa truuh
Don't go with him.	laa truuh ma9o.
don't bother	laa tgallib
Don't bother yourself.	laa tgallib haalak.
don't forget	laa tinsa
Don't forget to ask him.	laa tinsa tis'alo.
don't go	laa truuh
Don't go with him.	laa truuh ma9o.
don't bother	laa tgallib
Don't bother yourself.	laa tgallib haalik.
don't forget	laa tinsi
Don't forget to ask him.	laa tinsi tis'alii(h).

134 (Unit 15)

don't go	laa truuh
Don't go with him.	laa truuh ma9o.
don't bother	laa tgallib
Don't bother yourselves.	laa tgallib haalkum.
don't forget	laa tinsu
Don't forget to ask him.	laa tinsu tis'aluu(h).

GRAMMAR

1. Negative commands

A dependent prefix tense verb in the «you» form preceded by *laa no* has the meaning of a negative command: *laa truuh ma9o do not go with him !*

2. Place nouns

A given pattern may be associated with a specific added feature in such a way that it is best to regard the combination as a unit. Such a combination is called a pattern complex.

One very common added feature of this sort is a prefixed *m-*, which occurs with a variety of patterns: *maktab*, *maṣṣuul*, *mwazzaf*, *mit'assif*, *mudiir*, *mulḥaq*, *muftaah*.

One very common pattern complex of this sort is *ma--a-* (and its variant *ma--i-*), which often has the meaning «place of or for the action or state indicated by the root». This pattern, like most others, has variants depending on the root type. With this pattern may also occur the feminine ending *-e/-a*.

The following lists show *place nouns* that have occurred in Units 1-15, plus a few others that contain roots that have appeared in words in those Units.

(Unit 15) 135

(1) Regular roots : pattern ma--a- and ma--i-.

place noun		root	
mafra'	cross roads	fr'	separating
maktab	office	ktb	writing
mašğal	workshop	šğl	working
maṭṭam	restaurant	ṭm	tasting
maw'if	stopping place	w'f	stopping
maḡmal	factory	ḡml	doing
madrise	school	drs	studying
maḡkame	court	ḡkm	ruling
maktabe	library	ktb	writing

(2) Doubled roots : pattern m(a)-a--.

maḡall	place	ḡll	taking place of
mḡaṭṭa	station	ḡṭṭ	putting

(3) Hollow roots : pattern ma-aa-.

maṭaar	airport	ṭyr	flying
mazaar	shrine	zwr	visiting

(4) Weak roots : pattern ma--a.

mamša	corridor	mšy	walking
mašta	winter resort	štww	winter

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

btiḡki 9arabi ?	miin 9allamak 9arabi ?
feen t9allamt l9arabi ?	kam sane šarлак btiṭ9allam
bti'ra wibtuktub kamaan?	9arabi ?

fii 9indkum madaaris ktiire kam sane šarлак btiḡki 9arabi ?
bit9allim 9arabi ?

2. Go through the following sentences, replacing -ak you (m) by -kum you (pl), changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs to be changed. The first two are completed.

(1) 'alli bidḡo ysaa9dak.	'alli bidḡo ysaa9idkum.
(2) kam sane šarлак btiḡki 9arabi ?	kam sane šarlakum btiḡku 9arabi ?
'ayy wa't binaasbak ?	šufnaak fii mašir.
miin 9allamak 9arabi ?	'eemta zaarak 'aḡmad ?
'aḡmad sa'alni 9annak.	'addeš šarлак filjaam9a ?
baḡibb 'a9arrfak 9assayyid	barja9 'aaxdak ba9id saa9a.
9abdalla.	

3. Go through the following sentences, replacing -o/(-h) him by -hum them, changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs to be changed. The first two are completed.

(1) 'ayy wa't binaasbo ?	'ayy wa't binaasibhum ?
(2) mumkin tsaa9do ?	mumkin tsaa9idhum ?
miin 9allamo 9arabi ?	mumkin tsaa9duu(h) ?
bti9raffi šii 9anno ?	mumkin taaxdo mnii'uteel ?
kam sane šarlo budrus 9arabi ?	feen laa'eeto ?
bti9rafo šaxšiyyan ?	nsiit 'ajiblo liktaab.
saddi'. saami9 9anno.	sa'alt 'aḡmad 9anno ?
maa ba9rafo šaxšiyyan.	'addeš šarlo filmadrise ?

4. Change each of the following sentences into the negative, as illustrated in the first two.

(1) ruuh ma9o.	laa truuh ma9o.
(2) bihki 9arabi mniih.	maa bihki 9arabi mniih.
'is'ri badle min 9ind raasid.	hu'tt ssanta 9a'ttaawle.
'is'al 9anno.	stanna 9abda'lla.
xud l'jariide.	ta9aal lyoom.
hakeet ma9o.	bi9allim 9arabi.
ba9rafo mniih.	'akalt ktiir.
basadd'o.	t9allamt ktiir.
'riit l'jariide.	

5. In each of the following sentences change the «you (m)» verb form to the «you (pl)» form, as illustrated in the first two.

(1) 9ala 'ayy baaboer 'ijiit?	9ala 'ayy baaboer 'ijiitu?
(2) suu bit'uul?	suu bit'uulu?
fii 'ayy madrase ha'tteet	suu 'ult?
wlaadak?	bti'ra wibtuktub kamaan?
leeš fataht lbaab?	fii 'ayy madrase btiit9allam
min feen stareet li'maas?	9arabi?
ma9 miin ruht 9ala beeruut?	bti'hi 9arabi mniih.
fii 'ayy jaam9a t9allamt	ween darast 9arabi?
9arabi?	suu 9ambtudrus halla?
'riit l'jaraayid?	hakeet ma9 l'ustaaz?

6. In each of the following sentences change the «he» form of the verb to the «they» form. The first two are completed.

(1) daras 9arabi filmadrase.	darasu 9arabi filmadrase.
(2) suu bi'uul?	suu bi'uulu?
suu 'aal?	'iri l'jariide.
katab la'ahmad.	t9allam 9arabi fii 'ameerka.
ma9 miin raah 9ala beeruut?	bi'ra wbuktub kamaan?
fii 'ayy madrase ha'tt wlaado?	biddo yihki ma9 lmudiir.
9ala 'ayy baaboer 'aja?	miin 9allamo?

PATTERN SENTENCES

Good morning, Abu Khalil.	şabaah lxeer, 'abu xaliil.
Good morning, Mr. West.	şabaah nnuur, yaa mistir west.
health	şihha.
How's your health today?	kiif şihhtak lyoom?
So-so.	maasi lhaal.
Is business good?	nşaa'lla şşuğl mniih?
good, fine	kwayyis
Fine, praise God.	kwayyis, lhamdu lillaah.
We need a few vegetables.	laazimna şwayyit xuđra.
What do you have that's new?	şuu fii 9indak şii jdiid?
fresh (invariable adj.)	taaza
Everything I have is fresh.	kullşi 9indi taaza.
box	sanduu'
tomatoes	bandoora
as you wish	9ala keefak
I've just received a box of	halla 'ajaani sanduu' bandoora
tomatoes that you'll like.	9ala keefak.
kilo	kiilo
ukiyeh (200 grams)	w'iyye
Fine. Put out two kilos for me.	taayyib. huţţilli tneen kiilo.
Do you want something else?	btu'mur şii taani?
Yes, give me a kilo of squash.	na9am. 'a9tiini kiilo kuusa.
beans	luubya

140 (Unit 16)

And two kilos of beans.	witneen kiilo luubya.
cabbage	malfuuf
And three kilos of cabbage.	witlaate kiilo malfuuf.
Have you also got some good fruit?	fii 9indak kamaan fawaakih mniih?
whatever	'eeş maa
Of course, of course. There's whatever you want.	ma9luum. ma9luum. fii 'eeş maa biddak.
a watermelon	baţţixxa
All right. Give me a small watermelon.	taayyib. 'a9tiini baţţixxa zğiire.
go up, come out, amount to	ţili9 biţla9
Now, how much does our account amount to?	halla, şuu biţla9 hsaabna?
It amounts to three pounds and a quarter.	biţla9 9aleek, tlat liiraat wrubu9.
send	ba9at bib9at
Please send them to the house.	min fađlak, b9atli yyaahum 9albeet.
Gladly.	tikram.

Additional vocabulary

1. Vegetables

artichokes	'arđi šooki
beans (dried)	faşuulya
beans (Spanish beans)	fuul
beets	şamandar

(Unit 16) 141

cabbage	malfuuf
carrots	jazar
cauliflower	'arnabiit
chickpeas	hummuş
cucumbers	xyaar
eggplants	beetinjaan
garlic	tuum
lettuce	xass
mint	na9na9
okra	baamya
olives	zeetuun
onions	başal
parsley	ba'duunis
peas	bazeella
potatoes	baťaaťa
radishes	fijil
spinach	sabaanix
turnips	lift

2. Fruits

apricots	mişmiş
cherries	karaz
lemons	leemuun haamiq
mulberries	tuut
oranges	burd'aan
peaches	durraa'

142 (Unit 16)

pears	njaas
plums	xuux
strawberries	freez
tangerines	yuusif 'afandi, 'afandi

3. Meat and fish

beef	lahim ba'ar
chickens	jaaj
ham	jamboon
lamb	lahim xaruuf
liver	kibde
pork	lahim xanziir
shrimp	'reedis
turkey	diik habaš
veal	lahim 9ijil

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Collective nouns

Do you have watermelons?	fii 9indkum baṭṭiix ?
We have fresh fish today.	fii 9inna lyoom samak ṭaaza.
Oranges are cheap these days.	lburd'aan rxiiş haliyyaam.
There are bananas and apples and grapes and figs.	fii mooz, wtuffaah, w9inab, wtiin.
I don't like eggs.	maa baḥibb lbeed.

(Unit 16) 143

2. Unit nouns

Give me a little watermelon.	'a9tiini baṭṭiixa zǧiire.
Give me just one fish.	'a9tiini bass samake.
How many oranges did you take with you ?	kam burd'aane 'axatt ma9ak ?
Have an apple.	xood tuffaaha.
How many eggs do you give me for a pound ?	kam beeda bta9tiini bliira ?
Give me three watermelons.	'a9tiini tlat baṭṭiixaat.
Put out four fish for me.	ḥuṭṭilli 'arba9 samakaat.
Give me six oranges.	'a9tiini sitt burd'aanaat.
I ate three apples.	'akalt tlat tuffaahaat.
Six eggs for a pound.	sitt beedaat bliira.

3. Unit expressions

grain, seed, berry	ḥabbe
a tomato	ḥabbit bandoora
a cherry	ḥabbit karaz
an apricot	ḥabbit mišmiš
a fig	ḥabbit tiin
a grape	ḥabbit 9inab
Give me a tomato.	'a9tiini ḥabbit bandoora.
head	raas
an onion	raas basal
a radish	raas fijil
Give me an onion.	'a9tiini raas baṣal.

GRAMMAR

1. Collective nouns

Arabic has a class of nouns called *collectives*. These nouns indicate a species of object, not an individual specimen. An example is beed *eggs*. The typical collective noun is masculine in gender (e.g. beed) and has no plural.

Accompanying many collective nouns is a *unit noun*. This noun indicates an individual specimen, not the species as a whole. An example is beeda *an egg*. The typical unit noun is feminine in gender (e.g. beeda) and has a dual (beetteen) and a plural (beedaat). The plural is usually in -aat.

The collective noun with the prefix for «the» includes in its meaning *all* the specimens : bithibb lbeed *do you like eggs?* Without the prefix for «the» it means *some* of the specimens : bithibb beed *would you like some eggs?*

Some collective nouns lack an accompanying unit noun (or have one that is not frequently used). These often use an annexion phrase to indicate an individual specimen : ḥabbit bandoora *a tomato*, raas baṣal *an onion*.

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

kiif' ṣiḥḥtak ?	btu'mur šii taani ?
nšaalla ššuḡl mniiḥ ?	fii 9indkum xass ?
šuu fii 9indak šii jdiid ?	šuu biṭla9 ḥsaabna ?

2. In each of the following sentences replace kuusa by the name of another vegetable or fruit.

laazimna šwayyit kuusa.	min ween bidjiib lkuusa ?
-------------------------	---------------------------

ħaṭṭilli tneen kiilo kuusa. maa baħibb lkuusa.
 min faḍlak, 'a9ṭiini tneen fii 9indak kuusa ?
 kiilo kuusa.

3. In each of the following sentences replace the noun in parentheses by the appropriate pronoun ending. The first two are completed.

(1) jaabu (ssayyaara) jaabuuha ma9hum.
 ma9hum.
 (2) šufna ('abu xaliil) fii šufnaa fii beeruut.
 beeruut.
 sa'alu (l'ustaaz) 9an lmadrase. maa laa'u ('aħmad).
 ħaṭṭu (wlaadhum) filmadrise. sa'alna (l'ustaaz) 9anno.
 9allamu ('aħmad). ħaṭṭeena (lbint) filmadrise.
 maa bi9rafu ('aħmad) lissa maa zurna (l'ustaaz).
 šaxšiyyan. jibna (ssanduu) 9albeet.
 zaaru (l'ustaaz). laa'eena ('aħmad) filbeet.
 šaafu (bintna) fil'uds. nsiina (ljaraayid).
 leeš baa9u (lbeet) ? 'axadu (ssayyaara).

4. For each of the following verbs in the suffix tense «he» form give the prefix tense «he» form. The first example of each group is completed, and all the verbs within any one group work the same way.

samaħ bismaħ 'addam bi'addim maša bimši
 sa'al 'axxar ħaka
 fataħ 9allam
 sakkar

katab buktub raab biruub bi'i bib'a
 'amar zaar nisi
 šakar šaaf 'iri
 daras kaan
 riji9 birja9 jaab bijiib
 širib šaar
 9imil baa9
 fiħim
 9irif
 ṭili9

PATTERN SENTENCES

(Visiting Abu Najib)

Abu Najib	'abu najiib
Good morning, Abu Najib.	şabaah lxeer, yaa 'abu najiib.
Abu Akram	'abu 'akram
Good morning, Abu Akram.	şabaah lxeeraat, 'abu 'akram.
your safety (an expression said to a person who is sick)	salaamtak
my brother (an informal term of address used among equals or to an inferior)	'axi
Your safety, my friend.	salaamtak, yaa 'axi.
May God keep you (in reply). problem	'alla ysallmak wyihfazak. mas'ale
It's nothing serious, I hope.	xeer nşaaalla.
What's the matter? simple	şuu lmas'ale? başıit
A simple matter, praise God. cold	başıitā, lḥamdilla. raşih
I have a slight cold.	ma9i şwayyit raşih.

better	'aḥsan
Are you better today?	nşaa'lla 'aḥsan lyoom?
Praise God. I'm a little better. fever	lḥamdilla, 'aḥsan şwayy. ḥaraara or sxuune
The fever went away today.	lyoom, raahat lḥaraara.
be upset	zi9il biz9al
when	lamma(n)
hear	simi9 bisma9
that you	'innak
sick	mariid
Really, I was very upset when I heard that you were sick.	saddi'. z9ilt ktiir lamma smi9t innak mariid.
bed	farşe
How long have you been in bed?	'addees şarлак filfarşe?
It's been two weeks. by God (here a mild interjection)	şarli jumi9teen. wallaahi, walla
I just heard yesterday that you were ill.	wallaahi, bass mbaariḥ smi9t innak mariid.
doctor	duktoor
Because they told me the doctor was at your place.	li'anno 'aaluuli dduktoor kaan 9indak.
yes	'aywa
strike	ḡarab buḡrub
needle	'ibre

give an injection	qarab 'ibre
Yes, he came and gave me an injection.	'aywa. 'aja qarabni 'ibre.
medicine	dawa
And gave me some medicine.	w'a9taani šwayyit dawa.
get up	'aam bi'uuni
I hope you'll be all right soon.	ṭayyib, nšaa'lla bit'uuni 9assalaame.
Thank you (in reply).	'alla ysallmak.
(Inquiring about Abu Akram)	
How's Abu Akram's health ?	kiif šiḥḥit 'abu 'akram ?
He isn't very well.	saddi'. miš mniiḥ ktiir.
What's wrong with him ?	šuu maalo ?
influenza	'influwenza
He has the flu.	ma9o 'influwenza.
And he has a fever.	w9alee ḥaraara.
Well then, why doesn't he go to the hospital ?	'izan, leeš maa biruuh 9almustašfa ?
He is in the hospital.	maa huwwe filmustašfa.
And he's been there five days.	wšarlo hunaak xamis tiyyaam.
Well, why didn't you tell me ?	ṭayyib, leeš maa 'ultilli ?
think	ftakar biftkir
Why, I thought that you knew.	wallaahi, ftakart 'innak bti9raf.
Additional vocabulary	
pain, ache	waja9
ear ache	waja9 dineen

150 (Unit 17)

head ache	waja9 raas
stomach ache	waja9 mi9de, waja9 baṭin
tooth ache	waja9 snaan
upset stomach	talabbuk mi9de
pill	ḥabbe, pl. ḥbuub
thermometer	miizaan ḥaraara
have an operation	9imil 9amaliyye

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

I. Nisbe adjectives and nouns

The National Restaurant isn't bad.	lmaṭ9am lwaṭani miš baṭṭaal.
Do you like Arabic food ?	bithibb l'akl l9arabi ?
Do you know the military attaché ?	bti9raf lmulḥaq l9askari ?
Where's the American Embassy ?	ween ssafaara l'ameerkaaniyye?
Please direct me to the Arab Library.	min faḍlak, dillni 9almaktabe l9arabiyye.
Do you want a summer suit, or a winter suit ?	biddak badle šeeḥiyye, willa šatawiyye ?
He studied in the American University.	daras filjaam9a l'ameerkiyye.
Where did you study the Arabic language ?	ween darast lluga l9arabiyye ?

(Unit 17) 151

Mr. West is a journalist.	mistir west şuhufi.
Where is there a good watchmaker?	ween fii saa9aati mniih?
What's this in Arabic?	şuu haada bil9arabi?
Do you speak French?	btihki fransaawi?
Where's the English Consulate?	ween l'unşliyye lingliiziyye?

GRAMMAR

1. The nisbe

The suffix -i, meaning «of, pertaining to, connected with» makes adjectives out of nouns. (Compare the -al of English *personal*, the -ar of *consular*, the -ic of *economic*.) The Arabic grammatical term for this kind of word is *nisbe relation, proportion*. Following the Arabic practice, we shall call them *nisbe* adjectives.

The following lists show several types of nisbes, most of which have occurred in Units 1-17.

<i>nisbe</i>		<i>underlying noun</i>	
waṭani	<i>national</i>	waṭan	<i>homeland</i>
lubnaani	<i>Lebanese</i>	lubnaan	<i>Lebanon</i>
baladi	<i>municipal</i>	balad	<i>town</i>
maḥalli	<i>local</i>	maḥall	<i>place</i>
şaxşi	<i>personal</i>	şaxş	<i>person</i>

The -e/-a of feminine T-nouns is regularly dropped before the *nisbe* suffix.

ḍaruuri	<i>necessary</i>	ḍaruura	<i>necessity</i>
---------	------------------	---------	------------------

şihhi	<i>healthy</i>	sihha	<i>health</i>
ziraa9i	<i>agricultural</i>	ziraa9a	<i>agriculture</i>
şaḥaafi	<i>journalistic</i>	şaḥaafe	<i>journalism</i>

If the underlying noun regularly has the prefix for «the», this prefix is dropped in the *nisbe*.

šaami	<i>Damascene</i>	ššaam	<i>Damascus</i>
9iraaqi	<i>Iraqi</i>	9iraaq	<i>Iraq</i>
'urduni	<i>Jordanian</i>	'urdun	<i>Jordan</i>

Occasionally there is a change in the underlying stem.

'ameerkaani	<i>American</i>	'ameerka	<i>America</i>
fransaawi	<i>French</i>	fraansa	<i>France</i>
tiilyaani	<i>Italian</i>	'iitaaalya	<i>Italy</i>
šatawi	<i>winter</i>	šita	<i>winter</i>
sanawi	<i>annual</i>	sane	<i>year</i>

Occasionally the *nisbe* is formed from a plural noun.

saa9aati	<i>watchmaker</i>	saa9aat	<i>watches</i>
şuhufi	<i>journalist</i>	şuhuf	<i>newspapers</i>
9arabi	<i>Arab(ic)</i>	9arab	<i>Arabs</i>

The feminine of the *nisbe* always ends in -iyye, and the plural usually ends in -iyyiin, though other plurals occur.

<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>plural</i>	
waṭani	waṭaniyye	waṭaniyyiin	<i>national</i>
maḥalli	maḥalliyye	maḥalliyyiin	<i>local</i>
şeefi	şeefiyye	şeefiyyiin	<i>summer</i>
'ameerkaani	'ameerkaaniyye	'ameerkaan	<i>American</i>
'ingliizi	'ingliiziyye	'ingliiz	<i>English</i>

The feminine form of a nisbe is sometimes used as an independent noun, with a plural in -aat.

baladiyye	municipality
'unşliyye	consulate
9amaliyye	operation
şaxsiyye	personality

It is important to note that not all adjectives that end in -i are nisbes. For example, the final -i of *ğaaali expensive* is part of the root *ğly*; this is shown quite clearly in the feminine and plural forms: *ğaaalye, ğaaalyiin*.

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

xeer nşaa'lla. şuu lmas'ale?	kiif lxiidme filmustaşfa?
şuu maalak?	nşaa'lla bit'uum 9assalaame.
nşaa'lla 'aḥsan lyoom?	şaa'fak dduktoor?
'addees şarлак filmustaşfa?	şuft dduktoor?
9aleek ḥaraara?	'eemta tli9t min lmustaşfa?
leeş maa 'ultilli 'innak mariiḍ?	

2. In each of the following sentences replace the pronoun ending -ha *her* by -o/(h) *him*, changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs changing.

ma9ha şwayyit raşih.	'aja wḍarabha 'ibre.
smi9t 'inha mariiḍa.	w'a9ṭaaha şwayyit dawa.

'addees şarлак filfarşe?	şuu maalha?
'aaluuli dduktoor kaan	ma9ha raşh t'iil.
9indha.	w9aleeha ḥaraara.

3. In each of the following sentences replace the «she» form of the verb by the «he» form, changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs changing. The first two are completed.

(1) bass mbaariḥ sim9at 'inno mariiḍ.	bass mbaariḥ simi9 inno mariiḍ.
(2) 'aalatli dduktoor kaan 9indo.	'alli dduktoor kaan 9indo.
sa'latni 9annak.	nisyat t'ulli.
maa 9irfat 'innak hoon.	'iryat filjariide 'innak hoon.
9imlat 9amaliyye.	t9allamt 'ingliizi fii 'ameerka.
fihmat kullši.	şaa'fato fii beeruut.
'a9ṭato şwayyit dawa.	'aalatli maa şaa'fat ḥasan.
ftakrat 'innak bti9raf.	'aalatli nisyat 'ismo.
bass mbaariḥ rij9at min lmustaşfa.	ḥaṭṭathum fissayyaara.
maa xallato yruuḥ 9ala bağdaad.	şarat sayyaara jdiide.
	ḥakat ma9 'abu 'akram.

4. In each of the following sentences replace the word in parentheses by a different nisbe adjective or noun.

fii 'ayy jaami9a t9allamt (9arabi)?	daras lluga (l9arabiyye).
	biṭḥibb l'akl (l9arabi)?

štareet badle (seefiyye).	bti9raf lmulhaq (l9askari) ?
btiḥki (fransaawi) ?	ween ssafaara
zaarna lyoom waahad	(l'ameerkaaniyye) ?
('ingliizi).	šuu haada (bil9arabi) ?

5. Give appropriate replies to the following.

'assalaamu 9alaykum.	tšarrafnā.
kiif ḥaalak ?	tfaḍḍal zuurna filbeet.
tfaḍḍal striiḥ.	'ana mištaa'lak ktiir.
šukran.	šarraftuuna.
9an 'iznak.	daayme.
btismaḥli šwayy ?	miš qaruri tgallib ḥaalak.
xaaṭrak.	hanii'an.
xaaṭirkum.	mabruuk.
marḥaba.	'alla yxalliilak yyaahum.
'ahlan wasahlan.	ma9 ssalaame.
šabaah lxeer.	lḥamdilla 9assalaame.
masa lxeer.	salaamtak.

6. For each of the following verbs in the suffix tense «he» form give the prefix tense «he» form. The first example of each group is completed, and all the verbs in any one group work the same way.

'axad byaaxud	'aṭa9 bi'ṭa9	libis bilbas
'akal	fataḥ	lizim
	ḥafaz	simi9

katab	buktub	kaan	bikuun
qarab		'aal	
šakar			
'addam	bi'addim	tšarraḥ	bitsarraḥ
9arraḥ		tfaḍḍal	
šarraḥ		t9allam	
wa"af			
saa9ad	bisaa9id		
naasab			

PATTERN SENTENCES

Sulayman 'Abdo	sleemaan 9abdo
We're currently hearing a lot about Sulayman 'Abdo.	9ammnisma9 ktiir 9an sleemaan 9abdo.
article	maqaale, pl. -aat
And the newspapers have written a lot of articles about him.	wiljaraayid katbat 9anno maqaalaat ktiire.
that he	'inno
And they told me that he's from your town.	w'aaluuli 'inno min baladkum.
Do you know him personally?	bti9rafo šaxšiyyan ?
meet	jtama9 bi9tmi9
time	marra, pl. -aat
several times	9iddit marraat
Yes, I've met him several times.	na9am. jtama9t ma9o 9iddit marraat.
man	rijjaal
please	'a9jab bi9jib
And you'd like the man.	wirrijjaal bi9ijbak.
give a speech	xaṭab buxṭub
problem	mas'ale, pl. masaa'il

Listen to him give a speech on the national problems.

move, shake

the world

a moving, a shaking

He moves people profoundly.

And the people like him very much.

the second time

elect

member

parliament

And this is the second time

they've elected him member of parliament.

interest

people

Because with him the interest of the people comes before everything else.

if (contrary to fact)

poor, unfortunate

life

suffer

And if you knew how much trouble the poor man has had in his life.

'isma9o yuxṭub filmasaa'il lwaṭaniyye.

hazz bihizz

ddinya

hazz

bihizz ddinya hazz.

winnaas biḥibbuu ktiir.

taani marra

ntaxab bintixib

9uḍu

barlamaan

whaadi taani marra bintixbuu

9uḍu barlamaan.

maṣlaḥa

ša9b

li'anno 9indo maṣlaḥt šša9b

'abil kullši.

law

maskiin

ḥayaah

t9azzab bit9azzab

wlaw ti9raf 'addeš lmaskiin

t9azzab fi ḥayaato.

father	'ab
rich	ġani
poor	fa'iir
ground, land	'arġ, pl. 'araaġi
son	'ibin
in order to	ħatta
His father was poor and sold his lands in order to educate his son.	abuu kaan fa'iir, wbaa9 'araaġii ħatta y9allim 'ibno.
educated	mit9allim
Tell me, where was he educated?	'ulli. feen mit9allim huwwe?
the first thing	'awwal šii
college	kulliyye
First of all he was educated in the Arab College.	'awwal šii, t9allam filkulliyye l9arabiyye.
England	blaad lingliiz, 'ingiltra
law	ħuquuq, muħaamaah
Later he went to England and studied law.	ba9deen raah 9ablaad lingliiz, wdaras ħuquuq.
work	štaġal bištġil
court	maħkame
When he returned he worked in the court.	lamma riji9, štaġal filmahkame.
take place	šaar bišiir
elections	'intixaabaat

And when the elections took place they elected him mayor.	wlamma šaarat lintixaabaat, ntaxabuu ra'iis baladiyye.
sincere	muxliš
like	mitil
The man was sincere and not like the others.	rrijaal kaan muxliš, wmiš mitil ġeero.
be deceitful	tlaa9ab bitlaa9ab
He isn't deceitful.	maa bitlaa9ab.
if only	yaareet
responsible	mas'uul
thus, so	heek
we would be	lakunna
situation	ħaale
If only all the responsible ones were like that, we'd be in a different situation.	yaareet kull lmas'uuliin heek, lakunna fii ġeer halħaale.

Additional vocabulary

knowledge, science	9ilim, pl. 9uluum
Accounting	muħaasabe
Agriculture	ziraagħa
Commerce	tijaara
Economics	'iqtisaad
Education	tarbiye
Engineering	handase

History	taariix
Journalism	ṣaḥaafe
Literature	'adab, pl. 'aadaab
Medicine	ṭibb
Music	muusiiqa
Philosophy	falsafe
Political Science	ḡulum siyaasiyye
Psychology	ḡilm nnaḥs
Religion, Theology	ḡulum diiniyye
Sociology	ḡilm lijtimaaw

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Ordinal numbers

This is the first time I've come here.	haadi 'awwal marra baaji lahoon.
This is the second school he's gone to.	haadi taani madrase raah ḡaleeha.
My office is the third office on your right.	maktabi taalit maktab ḡala 'iidak lyamiin.
This is the fourth article the newspaper has written.	haadi raabiḡ maqaale katbatha ljaariide.
Go to the third window. dwelling	ruuh ḡaṣṣubbaak ttaalit. saakin

floor, story	{aabi'
I'm living on the second floor.	'ana saakin fiṭṭaabi' ttaani.
Go to the fourth floor.	ruuh ḡaṭṭaabi' rraabiḡ.

GRAMMAR

1. Ordinal numbers

The Arabic ordinal numbers are as follows :

<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	
'awwal	'uula	<i>first</i>
taani	taanye	<i>second</i>
taalit	taalte	<i>third</i>
raabiḡ	raabḡa	<i>fourth</i>
xaamis	xaamse	<i>fifth</i>
saadis	saadse	<i>sixth</i>
saabiḡ	saabḡa	<i>seventh</i>
taamin	taamne	<i>eighth</i>
taasiḡ	taasḡa	<i>ninth</i>
ḡaaṣir	ḡaaṣre	<i>tenth</i>

When these words follow the noun they modify, they behave as regular adjectives: ṣṣubbaak ttaalit *the third window*, l'uuda ttaalte *the third room*. However, the ordinal frequently precedes the noun. In this case, the ordinal is always masculine singular: 'awwal marra *the first time*, taalit maktab *the third office*. No definite rules can be given about which construction is preferred.

katab	buktub	ntaxab	bintxib
xaṭab		štaḡal	
daras		jtama9	
		ftakar	
riji9	birja9	xalla	bixalli
simi9		kaffa	
9irif			
dall	bidill	jaab	bijiib
hazz		ṣaar	
ḥabb		baa9	

PATTERN SENTENCES

Welcome, Hanna.	'ahla wsahla, yaa ḥanna.
Welcome to you.	'ahla wsahla fiik.
How are you?	kiif lḥaal?
So-so.	maaṣi lḥaal.
sit	'a9ad bu'9ud
in order to	la-
time	zamaan
Good. Sit down and let's see.	ṭayyib, 'u'9ud lanṣuuf.
I haven't see you for a long time.	min zamaan, maa ṣultak.
family	'ahil
How's your family?	kiif 'ahl lbeet?
greet	sallam bisallim
They send greetings.	bisallimu 9aleek.
May God keep you (in reply).	'alla ysallmak.
news	'axbaar
friend	ṣaahib, pl. (a)ṣhaab
What's the news of our friends?	ṣuu 'axbaar l'aṣhaab?
Well, who do you want to ask about?	ya9ni, miin biddak tis'al 9anno?

Husayn and 'Ali and Samir
and Ibrahim and Mahdi.
Slowly. One by one.
on his condition
Listen. Husayn is just as he
was.
teacher
He's a teacher in the
government school.
he wanted to go
Didn't he want to go to Iraq?
but
Yes, but his wife wouldn't let
him.
weather, climate
She says the climate is too hot.
All right. And 'Ali?
leave
position, job
department
'Ali left his job in the
Department of Health.
clerk
And now he's a petty clerk
in the Orient Hotel.

hseen, w9ali, wsamiir, wibraa-
hiim, wmaahi.
šwayy, šwayy. waahad, waahad.
9ala haalo
'isma9. hseen, lissaato 9ala
haalo.
m9allim
m9allim, fii madrast lhukuume.
kaan biddo yruuh
maa kaan biddo yruuh
9al9iraaq?
laakin
'aywa. laakin marto maa
xallato.
ta's
'aal tta's šoob kliir.
tayyib. w9ali?
tarak bitrik
waziife
daa'ira
9ali, tarak waziifto fii daa'irt
ššihha.
kaatib
whalla, kaatib zgiir fii 'uteel
ššarq.

But does he like his work?
More or less.
And Samir?
promote
As for Samir, I heard they
intend to promote him
because his work is good.
deserve
Believe me, he deserves it.
correct
That's correct.
you had asked me
You had asked me about
Ibrahim.
travel
mother's brother
Ibrahim went to Damascus to
his uncle's.
arrange
broadcasting (station)
And his uncle got a job for him
in the radio station.
And his wife went with him?
Yes, and she works in the
radio station, too.

bass, mabšuuṭ bšuglo?
ya9ni.
wsamiir?
ra"a bira"i
samiir, smi9t bidhum yra"uu.
li'anno šuglo kwayyis.
staḥa" bistih"i
saddi', bistih".
mažbuuṭ
haada mažbuuṭ.
kunt sa'altni
kunt sa'altni 9an braahiim.
saafar bisaafir
xaal
braahiim saafar 9aššaam, 9ind
xaalo.
dabbar bidabbir
'izaa9a
wxaalo dabbarlo waziife
fil'izaa9a.
wmarto raahat ma9o?
'aywa. whiyye, kamaan, btištgil
fil'izaa9a.

And what's the news of Mahdi?	w'suu 'axbaar mahdi?
Has he got a job?	n'saalla şağal?
As for Mahdi, I saw him in Beirut.	mahdi, şufto fii beeruut.
company	şirke
He works for a tourist agency.	biştğil ma9 şirkit siyaaha.
get ready	sta9add bist9idd
travel	safar
the United States	lwilaayaat lmuttāhide
And he's getting ready to go to the United States.	w9ambist9idd lassafar,
What's he going to do there?	lalwilaayaat lmuttāhide.
I think he's going to study.	şuu biddo yi9mal hunaak?
anyone	baftkir biddo yudrus.
if	had(a)
If you see any of them,	'iza
say hello to them for me.	'iza bitşuuf had minhum,
May God keep you (in reply).	sallimli 9alee(h).
	'alla ysallmak.

Additional vocabulary

Airline	şirkit tayaraan
electricity	kahraba
Electric company	şirkit kahraba
Oil Company	şirkit zeet
steamship	baaxira, pl. bawaaxir
Steamship company	şirkit bawaaxir

170 (Unit 19)

Higher numbers

One hundred and one	miyye wwaahad
One hundred and two	miyye witneen
One hundred and fifteen	miyye wxamis ta9s
One hundred and sixty	miyye wsittiin
One hundred and seventy-five	miyye wxamse wsab9iin
One thousand	'alf
Two thousand	'alfeen
Three thousand	tlat taalaaf
Twelve thousand	tna9sar 'alf
Thirty thousand	tlaatiin 'alf
Fifty-five thousand	xamse wxamsiin 'alf
One hundred thousand	miit 'alf
One million	malyoon
Two million	malyooneen
Three million	tlat malayiin
Twelve million	tna9sar malyoon

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Strict agreement

Where is there a good restaurant?	ween fii maţ9am mniih?
This is a clean place.	haada maħall nđiif.
His father was poor.	'abuu kaan fa'iir.
Ali left his job.	9ali tarak waẓiifto.
The trip was good.	ssafra kaanat mniiha.

(Unit 19) 171

My watch needs fixing.	saa9ti bidha tašliih.
His wife went with him.	marto raahat ma9o.
The fever went away today.	lyoom, raahat lharaara.
Are your children big or little?	wlaadak kbaar, willa zgaar ?
The people like him very much.	nnas bihibbuu ktiir.
My family is very busy.	'ahli mašguuliin ktiir.
There are a lot of people who work here.	fii naas ktiir bištiġlu hoon.
Two people taught me Arabic.	tneen 9allamuuni 9arabi.
There are two large bookstores here.	fii hoon maktabteen kbaar.
I bought two new suits.	štareet badilteen jdaad.

2. Deflected agreement

Things are at a standstill.	l'ašgaal waa'fe.
His prices are reasonable.	'as9aaro ma9'uule.
Do you have schools that teach Arabic ?	fii 9indkum madaaris bit9allim 9arabi ?
The newspapers have written a lot of articles about him.	ljaraayid katbat 9anno maqaalaat ktiire.
Listen to him give a speech on the national problems.	'isma9o yuxṭub filmasaa'il lwaṭaniyye.
People don't have any money.	nnas maa fii ma9ha mašaari.
I bought two summer suits.	štareet badilteen šeeṭiyye.

1. Compound numbers

In compound numbers above 20, the millions, thousands, hundreds, tens, and units are joined by *w-/wi- and*. A higher number precedes a lower one, except in combinations of units and tens, where the unit comes first : 'alf wtisi9 miyye wtamaanye wxamsiin *one thousand and nine hundred and eight and fifty (1958)*.

2. Agreement

A formal system of *agreement* (also called *concord*) connects subordinate words (adjectives, verbs, and pronouns) to the nouns on which they depend. Arabic has two principal types of agreement : *strict* and *deflected*.

(1) *Strict agreement* : Subordinate words have the same gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural) as the noun on which they depend.

'abuu kaan fa'iir. *His father was poor.*

ssaṭra kaanat mniihā. *The trip was good.*

wlaadak kbaar, willa zgaar ? *Are your children big or little ?*

nnas bihibbuu ktiir. *The people like him very much.*

(2) *Deflected agreement* : The noun is plural but the subordinate words are feminine singular. With non-personal plurals (i.e. plurals that do not refer to human beings) deflected agreement is more common than strict agreement. Deflected agreement may also occur with some noun plurals that refer to human beings; one of these is *naas people*.

'as9aaro ma9'uule. *His prices are reasonable.*

ljaraayid katbat 9anno maqaalaat *The newspapers have written*
 ktiire. *a lot of articles about him.*
 nnaas maa fii ma9ha ma9aari. *The people don't have any*
money.

The dual is a kind of plural. It shows deflected agreement if the noun is non-personal and the adjective is a nisbe : badilteen *seeftiye two summer suits*. Otherwise there is strict agreement : badilteen jdaad *two new suits*, ūḥufiyyeen *'ameerkaan two American journalists*.

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

šuu bti9rafi 9an ḥseen ?	9ind miin raah ?
feen bi9allim huwwe ?	šuu waziifto ?
leeš maa raah 9al9iraaq ?	miin dabbarlo lwaziife ?
9ali, lissaato fii daa'irt ššihḥa ?	marto raahat ma9o ?
feen bištḡil halla ?	feen btištḡil hiyye ?
laween saafar braahiim ?	

2. In each of the following sentences change the singular prefix tense verb form to the corresponding plural, making any other changes that may be necessary.

miin biddak tis'al 9anno ?	bukra bisaafir 9aššaam.
laazim 'atrik ba9id xamis	biddo ydabbirlak šuḡul.
tiyyaam.	'addees šarлак bti9allam
'addees šarлак btudrus	filjaam9a ?
9arabi ?	bištḡil fii 'uteel ššarq.

kam yoom raḥtu'9ud hoon ?	'addees šarлак btištḡil hoon ?
bukra baruuh 9al9iraaq.	saddi', biṣṭhi''.
leeš maa bitruuh ma9i ?	'addees šarlo biḥki 9arabi ?
'eemta biddak tsaafir ?	

3. In each of the following sentences change the singular suffix tense verb form to the corresponding plural, making any other changes that may be necessary.

raah 9al9iraaq 'abil santeen.	saafar 9abeeruut 9ind xaalo.
šaaf mahdi fii beeruut.	štāḡalt fil'izaa9a.
'alli 'inno raḥyiiji lahoon.	štāḡal fii 'uteel ššarq.
'eemta tarakt ššaam ?	jtama9t ma9o 9iddit marraat.
tarak šuḡlo.	maa xallaa yruuh 9aššaam.
kunt sa'altni 9an samiir.	feen laa'a šuḡul ?
dabbarlo waziife fii širkit	'riit 9anno maqaalaat ktiire.
siyaaha.	ḥakaali 9an ḥseen.
dabbartillo waziife kwayyise.	sta9addeet lassafar ?
saafart 9aššaam.	

4. In each of the following sentences change the prefix tense verb forms to the corresponding suffix tense forms.

ḥseen biruuh 9abeeruut.	binsaafir 9al9iraaq.
marto maa bitruuh ma9o.	bisaa9id 'abun.
bizuur xaalo fiššaam.	baaxud lbaaboor min beeruut.
bnirja9 9al'uds.	bnaaxud tṭayyaara labāḡdaad.
badrus ḥuquuq.	bištḡil ma9 širkit siyaaha.
bidabbirli waziife filḥukuume.	bištḡilu fii 'uteel plaaza.

5. Give the Arabic equivalent of the following numbers.

21	71	93	54	632
102	726	81	91	1917
115	31	88	999	1929
140	550	228	425	1939
41	65	61	307	1941
400	51	75	650	1953

6. For each of the following verbs in the suffix tense «he» form give the prefix tense «he» form. The first example of each group is completed, and all the verbs within any one group work the same way.

fara'	bifri'	kaan	bikuun
tarak		raah	
sallam	bisallim	saaf	
dabbar		'aal	
9arraf		'aam	
saa9ad	bisaa9id	kaffa	bikaffi
saafar		xalla	
naasab		ra" a	

UNIT 20 • A radio station — I.

PATTERN SENTENCES

Persons : F : Fathi, the director of the station ; A : 'Ali, his assistant ; W : Mr. West ; A group of Americans from the Embassy.

('Ali speaks to Mr. West and the group of Americans)

before	'abil maa
have (someone) visit	zawwar bizawwir
part, division, section	qisim, pl. 'aqsaam

A : Let's drink a cup of coffee before we have you visit the divisions of the broadcasting station.

xalliina ni9rab finjaan 'ahwe, 'abil maa nzawwirikum 'aqsaam l'izaa9a.

In a little while the director will come, and I'll introduce you to him.

ba9d 9wayy, bijji lmudiir, wba9arrifkum 9alee.

('Ali goes in to see the director)

Mr. Fathi, could you give us a few minutes of your time ?

yaa 'ustaaz fathi, mumkin ta9tiina min wa'tak kam d'ii'a?

Because we have some American visitors that work in the Embassy. be introduced

li'anno fii 9inna zuwwaar 'ameerkaan, bi9ti9lu fissaafaara. t9arraf bit9arraf

And they'd like to be introduced to you.
 F : They're very welcome. Have them come in.
 purpose
 Do you know what their purpose is ?
 intention, object
 meet
 A : I think their intention is first of all to meet you.
 look around, look over
 And then to look around the broadcasting station.
 very
 F : But it's very necessary for us to give them more attention than other people.
 so that
 So that they'll leave here with a good impression.

wbihibbu yit9arrafu 9ala haqirtak.
 'ahlan wasahlan. xalliikum yitfaqqalu.
 garaq
 bti9raf suu garaqhum ?
 gaaye
 'aabal bi'aabil
 baftkir gaayithum 'abil kullsi, 'inhum y'aabluuk.
 tfarraj bitfarraj
 wba9deen yitfarraju 9al'izaa9a.
 jiddan
 bass darruri jiddan, nihtamm fiikum, 'aktar min geerhum.
 lahatta
 lahatta yitla9u min hoon
 bfikra mniiha.

(Ali returns to the group of Americans)

A : Please come with me to the director.
 delighted
 visit
 have a good time

tfaddalu ma9i 9ind lmudiir.
 masruur
 zyaara
 nbaaṣat binbaṣit

F : Welcome. I'm delighted at your visit, and hope you'll have a good time here.
 brethren
 show
 Now 'Ali, let's go with the gentlemen, and show them whatever they want.
 after
 finish
 And after we've finished I shall be very delighted if you will come with me to lunch.
 inconvenience
 W: The honor is ours, only if it won't be an inconvenience for you.
 (not) at all
 F : No, there's no inconvenience at all. You're very welcome.

'ahlan wasahlan. 'ana masruur bizyaarikhum, winsaalla btiinbiṣtu hoon.
 'ixwaan
 farja bifarji
 halla yaa 9ali, xalliina nruuh ma9 l'ixwaan, winfarjiikum suu maa bidhum.
 ba9id maa
 xallaṣ bixalliṣ
 wba9id maa nxalliṣ bakuun masruur jiddan, 'iza btiitfaqqalu ma9i 9alḡada.
 'iz9aaj
 'ilna ṣṣaraf, bass 'iza maa bikuun fii 'iz9aaj lahaqritikum.
 'abadan
 la'. maa fii 'iz9aaj 'abadan.
 'ahlan wasahlan fiikum.

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Relative sentences with ('i)lli

Where is the book ?
 It was on the table.

feen liktaab ?
 kaan 9attaawle.

Where is the book that was on the table? feen liktaab lli kaan 9aṭṭaawle?

Do you know the man? bti9raf rriijaal?
 He was across from us. kaan 'baalna.
 Do you know the man who was across from us? bti9raf rriijaal lli kaan 'baalna?
 This is the restaurant. haada lmaṭ9am.
 I told you about it. 'ultillak 9anno.
 This is the restaurant that I told you about. haada lmaṭ9am lli 'ultillak 9anno.

What's the price of the car? 'addees ḥa" ssayyaara?

You want to buy it. biddak tiṣṭriiha.
 What's the price of the car that you want to buy? 'addees ḥa" ssayyaara lli biddak tiṣṭriiha?

Who is the teacher? miin l'ustaaz?
 He taught you. 9allamak.
 Who's the teacher who taught you? miin l'ustaaz lli 9allamak?

Who? miin?
 They visited the broadcasting station today zaaru l'izaa9a lyoom.
 Who are (the people) that visited the broadcasting station today? miin lli zaaru l'izaa9a lyoom?

2. Relative sentences without ('i)lli

Do you have schools? fii 9indkum madaaris?
 She teaches Arabic. bit9allim 9arabi.
 Do you have schools that teach Arabic? fii 9indkum madaaris, bit9allim 9arabi?
 We have American visitors. fii 9inna zuwwaar 'ameer-kaan.
 They work in the Embassy. biṣṭiḡlu fissaafaara.

We have some American visitors that work in the Embassy. fii 9inna zuwwaar 'ameerkaan, biṣṭiḡlu fissaafaara.

This is the third job. haadi taalit waḏiife.
 He took it. 'axadha.

This is the third job he's taken. haadi taalit waḏiife 'axadha.
 There's a man here. fii rijjaal hoon.

He wants to speak to you. biriid yiḥki ma9ak.
 There's a man here who wants to speak to you. fii rijjaal hoon, biriid yiḥki ma9ak.

I have a friend. fii 9indi ṣaahib.
 I want to introduce you to him. biddi 'a9arrfak 9alee(h).

I have a friend I want to introduce you to. fii 9indi ṣaahib, biddi 'a9arrfak 9alee.

.3 The word ('i)lli as a pronoun

You want it.	biddak yyaa(h).
Choose what you want.	na''i lli biddak yyaa.
I know him.	ba9rafo.
As far as I know, he's not here.	'illi ba9rafo, 'inno miš hoon.
He wants me.	biddo yyaani.
He who wants me, let him come to me.	'illi biddo yyaani, yijji la9indi.
You told me it.	'ultilli yyaa(h).
What you told me is right.	'illi 'ultilli yyaa, mazbuuf.

GRAMMAR

1. Relative sentences

A compound sentence like *feen liktaab lli kaan 9aṭṭaawle?* *where is the book that was on the table?* consists of two independent sentences: *feen liktaab?* *where is the book?* and *kaan 9aṭṭaawle* *it was on the table*, connected by the word ('i)lli *the one*.

The first sentence is called the *principal* sentence, the second the *relative* sentence. The relative sentence is like an adjective; it modifies or describes a noun, called the *antecedent*, in the principal sentence (in this case *liktaab the book*).

If the antecedent is definite (e.g. *liktaab the book*), the two sentences are linked by ('i)lli. If the antecedent is indefinite (e.g. *rijjaal a man*) there is no linking word, as in *fii rijjaal hoon*, *bi-riid yihki ma9ak* *there is a man here who wants to speak to you*.

The relative sentence almost always contains a cross-reference to the antecedent noun. This may be the subject marker of a verb, as in the sentences above; this is the case when the antecedent is the subject of the relative sentence. Or it may be a pronoun ending; this is the case when the antecedent is not the subject of the relative sentence. For example, in the compound sentence *haada lmaṭ9am lli 'ultillak 9anno* *this is the restaurant I told you about*, the pronoun ending -o *him* refers back to *lmaṭ9am the restaurant*. In sentences like *na''i lli biddak yyaa(h)* *choose what you want*, the word ('i)lli is a pronoun. It is here the antecedent of the following relative sentence *biddak yyaa(h)* *you want it*; the pronoun -(h) refers back to ('i)lli.

2. Simple and complex verbs

The Arabic verb is divided into two main groups: *simple* verbs, having stems consisting of a root plus a simple pattern, and *complex* verbs, having stems consisting of a root plus a pattern complex.

Following the tradition of the native Arab grammarians, we distinguish nine classes or *Forms* of the complex verb, and mark them with the customary roman numerals, II-X, number I being reserved for the simple verb.

3. Verbs of Form I

The characteristic of verbs of Form I is that they have a simple pattern. There are four main variants, depending on the root type.

(1) Regular roots. Suffix tense may be -a-a- or -i-i-; prefix tense -a-, -i-, -u-.

root			
fṭḥ	fataḥ	biftaḥ	open

s'l	sa'al	bis'al	<i>ask</i>
fr'	fara'	bifri'	<i>make a difference</i>
trk	tarak	bitrik	<i>leave</i>
drs	daras	budrus	<i>study</i>
ktb	katab	buktub	<i>write</i>
fhm	fihim	bifham	<i>understand</i>
šrb	širib	bišrab	<i>drink</i>
msk	misik	bimsik	<i>hold</i>

(2) Doubled roots. Suffix tense -a--; prefix tense -i-- , -u-- , -a-- (rare).

dll	dall	bidill	<i>direct</i>
hbb	habb	bihibb	<i>like</i>
hṭṭ	haṭṭ	biḥuṭṭ	<i>put</i>
tmm	tamm	bitamm	<i>remain</i>

(3) Hollow roots. Suffix tense -aa-; prefix tense -ii-, -uu-, -aa- (rare).

jyb	jaab	bijiiib	<i>bring</i>
šyr	šaar	bišiir	<i>become</i>
kwn	kaan	bikuun	<i>be</i>
zwr	zaar	bizuur	<i>visit</i>
nwm	naam	binaam	<i>sleep</i>

(4) Weak roots. Suffix tense may be -a-a or -i-i; prefix tense --a or --i.

bdy	bada	bibda	<i>begin</i>
hky	ḥaka	biḥki	<i>speak</i>
mšy	maša	bimši	<i>walk</i>
b'y	bi'i	bib'a	<i>remain</i>
nsy	nisi	binsa	<i>forget</i>

4. Verbs of Form II

The characteristic of verbs of Form II is doubling of the second consonant of the root. There are two variants of the pattern, depending on the root type.

(1) Regular, Doubled, and Hollow roots. Suffix tense -a-a-; prefix tense -a--i-.

<i>root</i>			
šrf	šarraf	bišarrif	<i>honor</i>
9lm	9allam	bi9allim	<i>teach</i>
9rf	9arraf	bi9arrif	<i>introduce</i>
jdd	jaddad	bijaddid	<i>renew</i>
xff	xaffaf	bixaffif	<i>lighten</i>
zwd	zawwad	bizawwid	<i>supply</i>
'yd	'ayyad	bi'ayyid	<i>support</i>

(2) Weak roots. Suffix tense -a- -a; prefix tense -a--i.

r'y	ra'a	bira'i	<i>promote</i>
xly	xalla	bixalli	<i>keep, allow</i>

Many of these verbs have the meaning « cause something to happen »: 9arraf *make (someone) know, introduce*, beside 9irif *know*; fahham *make (someone) understand*, beside fihim *understand*; zawwar *have (someone) visit*, beside zaar *visit*.

5. Verbs of Form III

The characteristic of verbs of Form III is long *aa* between the first and second consonants of the root. There are two variants of the pattern, depending on the root type.

(1) Regular, Doubled, and Hollow roots. Suffix tense -aa-a-; prefix tense -aa-i-.

root

'bl	'aabal	bi'aabil	meet
sfr	saafar	bisaafir	travel
s9d	saa9ad	bisaa9id	help
'şş	'aaşaş	bi'aaşiş	punish
jwb	jaawab	bijaawib	answer

(2) Weak roots. Suffix tense -aa-a; prefix tense -aa-i.

hky	haaka	bihaaki	talk to
l'y	laa'a	bilaa'i	meet, find

Many of these verbs have the meaning « reciprocal interaction or cooperation ».

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.
 miin mudiir l'izaa9a? feen biştiglu humme?
 miin lli zaaru l'izaa9a lyoom? šuu kaan ġarađhum?
2. In each of the following sentences replace the expression in parentheses by the appropriate pronoun ending.
 zawwarna (l'ameerkaan) binfarji (zzuwwaar) šuu maa
 'aqsaam l'izaa9a. bidhum.
 9arrafna (l'ameerkaan) xallaşna (şşuġul).
 9almudiir. sa'alna (hasan) 9anno.
 bihibbu yit9arrafu 9a(lmudiir). bti9rafu (lmudiir)?
 bihibbu y'aablu (lmudiir). šaafu (l'izaa9a)?
 'aabal (l'ustaaz fathi). baa9u (l'araađi).
 'aabalna (l'ustaaz fathi). ntaxabu (9ali) 9uđu barlamaan.
 'aabalna (mulhaq ttayaraan). laa'eetu (9ali) fil'izaa9a?
 9arraftu (zzuwwaar) 9almudiir? ra''u (hasan)?
 'aabaltu (lmudiir) šaxšiyyan? štareena (ssayyaara).
 smi9tu (sleemaan 9abdo) bnistanna (9ali) hoon.
 yuxtub? bihibbu (9ali) ktiir.
3. In each of the following sentences change the prefix tense form of the verb to the corresponding suffix tense.
 binzawwirhum l'izaa9a. leeš maa bit'aablo šaxšiyyan?
 ba9deen biiji l'ustaaz fathi. ba9deen bitfarraju 9al'izaa9a.

ba9arrifhum 9alee.
bištiḡlu fissaafaara.

binfarjiikum šuu maa biḡhum.
'eemtan bitxalliṣ šuḡlak ?

sakkar bisakkir tšarraf bitšarraf
zawwar tfaḡḡal
9arraf t9arraf
xallaṣ t9allam
faḡḡal tfarraj
t9azzab

4. Give the Arabic for the following.

Who's the teacher that taught him ? He understands everything that I tell him.
This is the car he wants to sell. This is the fourth time he's asked me.
Who's the man that came with you ? I have a car that needs fixing.
Where's the bookstore you told me about ? This is the first time I've seen him.
Is this the article I ought to read ? We have several schools that teach Arabic.
Is this the hospital that Hasan went to ? This is a problem that we have to study.
We have some visitors who want to meet the director. I've heard that he has a house that he wants to sell.
I've read several articles that he wrote.

5. For each of the following verbs in the suffix tense « he » form give the prefix tense « he » form. The first example of each group is completed, and all the verbs within any one group work in the same way.

fihim	bifham	saa9ad	bisaa9id	'aal	bi'uul
širib		naasab		kaan	
9irif		'aabal		'aam	

PATTERN SENTENCES

begin	bada bibda
room	gurfe
F : All right, 'Ali, let's begin with the news room.	ṭayyib, yaa 9ali. xalliina nibda bğurfir fit l'axbaar.
agency	wakaale, pl. -aat
supply	zawwad bizawwid
We have several agencies that supply us with news.	fii 9inna 9iddit wakaalaat bidzawwidna bil'axbaar.
for example	matalan
Reuters	wakaalit rooytar
the Arab News Agency	wakaalt l'anbaa' l9arabiyye
For example, Reuters and the Arab News Agency and others.	matalan, wakaalit rooytar, wwakaalt l'anbaa' l9arabiyye, wgeerhum.
editing	ṭaḥriir
translation	tarjame
The division of editing and translation is in the next room.	qism ṭaḥriir wittarjame, fil-gurfe ttaanye.
take turns at	tnaawab bitnaawab
work	9amal

night and day
And we have there five employees that take turns at the work night and day.

bulletin
news (adj.)
broadcast
našra, pl. -aat
'ixbaari
'azaa9 bizii9

W : How many news bulletins do you broadcast per day ?

morning (adj.)
evening (adj.)

F : We have a morning bulletin at seven o'clock.

afternoon

Then there's the two o'clock afternoon bulletin.

And there are two bulletins in the evening.

One at six o'clock and the other at ten o'clock.

All of these bulletins are in the Arabic language.

suppose

And I suppose that you hear our English bulletin at 5 : 30.

ṭuul lleel winnhaar
w9inna hunaak xams mwazza-fin, bitnaawabu l9amal, ṭuul lleel winnhaar.

našra, pl. -aat
'ixbaari
'azaa9 bizii9
kam našra 'ixbaariyye bidzii9u filyoom ?

ṣabaahī
masaa'i

fii 9inna našra ṣabaahīyye, ssaa9a sab9a.

ba9d qduhur
ba9deen, fii našrit ssaa9a tinte ba9d qduhur.
wfii naširteen filmasa.

waḥde ssaa9a sitte, wittaanye ssaa9a 9ašra.

haadi nnašraat kullha, filluḡa l9arabiyye.

ḡann bizunn
w'azunn 'inkum btisma9u našritna lingliiziyye, ssaa9a xamse wnuṣṣ.

Now excuse me for a little while.
 halla btismahuuli swayy.

appointment	maw9id
ministry, cabinet	wazaara
the prime minister	ra'iis lwazaara

Because I have an appointment with the Prime Minister.
 li'anno 9indi maw9id ma9 ra'iis lwazaara.

I hope I'll see you in an hour.
 nsaalla ba9uufkum ba9id saa9a

have (someone) go around
 dawwar bidawwir

'Ali, have them go around the other divisions.
 yaa 9ali. dawwirhum 9al'aaq-saam ttaanye.

program
 barnaamaj

child
 tifi1, pl. 'a'faal

And let them hear the children's program.
 wxalliihum yisma9u barnaamaj l'a'faal.

studio
 stuudyo

recording
 tasjiil

And then take them to the recording studio.
 wxudhum ba9deen 9astuudyo ttasjiil.

party
 ha'fe

music (adj.)
 muusiiqi

So that they may hear our music recital.
 la9atta yisma9u ha'fiitna lmuusiiqiyye.

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. The comparative

bigger, older	'akbar
---------------	--------

He's older than I am.
 huwwe 'akbar minni fil9umur.

farther
 'ab9ad |

Which is farther from here ?
 Baghdad or Cairo ?
 miin 'ab9ad min hoon ?
 ba9daad, willa lqaahira ?

better
 'a9san |

He speaks Arabic better than I do.
 bi9ki 9arabi 'a9san minni.

more
 'aktar |

He knows more French than his wife does.
 bi9raf fransaawi 'aktar min marto.

nicer
 'a9la |

There's nothing nicer than that.
 'a9la min heek, maa fii.

better for you
 'a9sanlak |

It's better for you to come with me.
 'a9sanlak tiiji ma9i.

He's the youngest of them.
 huwwe 'az9ar waahad fiihum. |

more important
 'ahamm |

The most important problem of today is the problem of the elections.
 'ahamm mas'ale lyoom, mas'alt lintixaabaat.

middle	'awṣaṭ
I studied the history of the Middle East.	darast taariix ṣṣarq l'awṣaṭ.
near	'adna
This is a map of the Near East.	haadi xaarta laṣṣarq l'adna.
far	'aqṣa
I don't know much about the Far East.	maa ba9raf ktiir 9an ṣṣarq l'aqṣa
supreme	'a9la, f. 9ulya
His father works in the Supreme Court.	'abuu biṣṭiḡil filmaḥkame l9ulya.
busier	maṣḡuul 'aktar
I'm busier than you are.	'ana maṣḡuul 'aktar minnak.

2. Comparative after maa

How nice she is !	maa 'aḥlaaha.
How big it is !	maa 'akbaro.

GRAMMAR

1. The comparative

Arabic has a class of words called *comparatives*. The typical comparative correlates with an underlying adjective, has the same root as the adjective, has a predictable pattern, and has a meaning closely related to the meaning of the adjective.

(1) With Regular and Hollow roots the comparative has the pattern 'a--a-.

root	comparative	underlying adjective
kbr	'akbar <i>bigger</i>	kbiir <i>big</i>
zḡr	'azḡar <i>smaller</i>	zḡiir <i>small</i>
b9d	'ab9ad <i>farther</i>	b9iid <i>far</i>
'rb	'a'rab <i>nearer</i>	'ariib <i>near</i>
ṭyb	'aṭyab <i>tastier</i>	ṭayyib <i>tasty</i>

(2) With Doubled roots the pattern is 'a-a- (occasionally 'a-a-, as above).

jdd	'ajadd <i>newer</i>	jdiid <i>new</i>
xff	'axaff <i>lighter</i>	xafiif <i>light</i>
hmm	'ahamm <i>more important</i>	muhimm <i>important</i>

(3) With Weak roots the pattern is 'a--a.

ḥlw	'aḥla <i>nicer</i>	ḥilu <i>nice</i>
ḡly	'aḡla <i>more expensive</i>	ḡaali <i>expensive</i>
9ly	'a9la <i>higher</i>	9aali <i>high</i>

All the above are either masculine or feminine in gender. There is a special pattern that is feminine only: -u--a. This is quite rare, is restricted to a few roots, and chiefly appears in expressions borrowed from the written language.

kbr	kubra <i>major</i>
ṣḡr	ṣuḡra <i>minor</i>
wṣṭ	wuṣṭa <i>central</i>
fṣḥ	fuṣḥa <i>pure</i>
9ly	9ulya <i>supreme</i>

Most adjectives with a pattern complex do not form the comparative by a pattern, but by a phrase with 'aktar *more*: mašguul 'aktar *busier*; mit9allim 'aktar *more educated*. One adjective, muhiib *good*, has a suppletion root: 'ahsan *better*.

The Arabic comparative is the equivalent of both the English comparative (*nearer, more important*) and superlative (*nearest, most important*). When two objects or classes are compared the usual translation is the English comparative: beeruut 'akbar min 9ammaan *Beirut is larger than Amman*; the Arabic equivalent of *than* is *min*. When more than two objects are compared, or when an absolute statement is made, the usual translation is the English superlative: Imahkame l9ulya *the supreme court*, 'ahamm mas'ale *the most important problem*.

A very common construction consists of the comparative immediately followed by an indefinite singular noun: 'ahamm mas'ale *the most important problem*. This is generally translated by a definite superlative, although the Arabic construction is grammatically indefinite.

A special use of the comparative is in a construction following unstressed maa. The meaning is exclamatory: maa 'akbaro *how big it is!*

2. Verbs of Form IV

The characteristic of verbs of Form IV is a prefixed 'a- in the suffix tense; this element drops in the prefix tense. There are four variants of the pattern, depending on the root type.

- (1) Regular roots. Suffix tense 'a--a-; prefix tense --i-.

root

9jb	'a9jab	bi9jib	<i>please</i>
z9j	'az9aj	biz9ij	<i>disturb</i>

- (2) Doubled roots. Suffix tense 'a-a-; prefix tense -i-.

srr	'ašarr	biširr	<i>insist</i>
-----	--------	--------	---------------

- (3) Hollow roots. Suffix tense 'a-aa-; prefix tense -ii-.

zy9	'azaa9	bizii9	<i>broadcast</i>
-----	--------	--------	------------------

- (4) Weak roots. Suffix tense 'a--a-; prefix tense --i-.

9ty	'a9ta	bya9ti	<i>give</i>
-----	-------	--------	-------------

Verbs of Form IV are very rare in spoken Arabic.

3. Verbs of Form V

The characteristics of verbs of Form V are two: doubling of the second consonant of the root, and prefixed t-. There are two variants of the pattern, depending on the root type.

- (1) Regular, Doubled, and Hollow roots. Suffix and prefix tense patterns identical: t-a--a-.

root

šrf	tšarraf	bitšarraf	<i>be honored</i>
9lm	t9allam	bit9allam	<i>be taught, learn</i>
9rf	t9arraf	bit9arraf	<i>be introduced</i>
'ss	t'assas	bit'assas	<i>be established</i>
jwz	djawwaz	bidjawwaz	<i>be married</i>

- (2) Weak roots. Suffix and prefix tense patterns identical: t-a--a-.

r'y	tra"a	bitra"a	<i>be promoted</i>
-----	-------	---------	--------------------

Many of these verbs have the meaning «the subject is being acted upon», often translated by the English passive phrase.

Form V stands in a reciprocal relation to Form II. When the Form II verb means «cause (something)», the corresponding Form V verb means «be caused»: šarraf *honor*, beside tsarraf *be honored*.

4. Verbs of Form VI

The characteristics of verbs of Form VI are two: long *aa* between the first and second consonants of the root, and prefixed *t-*. There are two variants of the pattern, depending on the root type.

(1) Regular, Doubled, and Hollow roots. Suffix and prefix tense patterns identical: *t-aa-a-*.

root

l9b	tlaa9ab	bitlaa9ab	<i>be deceitful</i>
s9d	tsaa9ad	bitsaa9ad	<i>be helped</i>
'šš	t'aašš	bit'aašš	<i>be punished</i>
nwb	tnaawab	bitnaawab	<i>take turns at</i>

(2) Weak roots. Suffix and prefix tense patterns identical: *t-aa-a-*.

l'y	tlaa'a	bitlaa'a	<i>meet together</i>
-----	--------	----------	----------------------

Some of these verbs have the meaning «reciprocal action by more than one actor», and are usually in the plural: bitnaawabu l9amal *they take turns at the work*.

Others have the meaning «the subject is being acted upon», much like verbs of Form V.

Form VI stands in a reciprocal relation to Form III. When the Form III verb means «do (something)», the corresponding Form VI verb means «be done»: saa9ad *help*, tsaa9ad *be helped*

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following sentences.

suu 'awwal šii šaafuu?	kam našra bizii9u filmasa?
min feen btii9i 'axbaar l'izaa9a?	b'ayy luğa bizii9u našraat
kam mwazzaf fii qism ttahriir	l'axbaar?
wittarjame?	'ayy barnaamaj sim9u ba9id
kam našra 'ixbaariyye bizii9u	maa tarakhum lmudiir?
filyoom?	9ala 'ayy stuudyo raahu?
'ayy saa9a nnašra ššabaahiyye?	suu sim9u hunaak?
'eemta bizii9u našrit ba9d	
qduhur?	

2. In each of the following sentences change the suffix tense form of the verb to the corresponding prefix tense.

zawwarnaahum 'aqsaam	tnaawabna l9amal.
l'izaa9a.	kam našra 'azaa9u filyoom?
9arrafnahum 9almudiir.	b'ayy luğa 'azaa9u našraat
'aabaluu šaxšiyyan.	l'axbaar?
bada bğurfit l'axbaar.	dawwarthum 9al'aqsaam
'ayy saa9a badat l'izaa9a?	ttaanye.
zawwaduuha bil'axbaar.	'axadnaahum 9ala qism ttahriir.

3. Give the Arabic for the following, using the noun annexion construction.

the news of the friends	the director's visit
the news of our friends	the news room

news of Samir	the recording room
a government school	the children's program
the government school	several divisions
the health department	several agencies
a tourist agency	the sections of the radio station
an airline (an aviation company)	the translation section
	the editing section

4. For each of the following verbs in the suffix tense « he » form give the prefix tense « he » form. The first example of each group is completed, and all the verbs within any one group work the same way.

riji9	birja9	tlaa9ab	bitlaa9ab
simi9		tnaawab	
fihim			
9imil			
'addam	bi'addim	ħaṭṭ	biḥuṭṭ
zawwar		zann	
dawwar			
zawwad			

PATTERN SENTENCES

(Farid is talking to a secretary in the Consulate)

coming, having come	jaay
present	'addam bi'addim
request	ṭalab
I've come to present a request for a job in the Consulate.	'ana jaay 'a'addim ṭalab šuḡul fil'unṣliyye.
Who should I see?	miin laazim 'ašuuf?
Please wait a moment.	min faḍlak, stanna šwayy.

(The secretary goes out and returns)

In five minutes the consul would like to meet you personally.	ba9id xamis da'aayi', l'unṣul biḥibb y'aablak šaxšiyyan.
---	--

(Farid goes in to see the consul)

sort	noo9
What sort of work do you want?	šuu noo9 ššuḡl lli biddak yyaa?
pertaining to writing	kitaabi

typing	ṭibaa9a
or	'aw
accounting	m(u)ḥaasabaat
Oh, a secretarial position such as translating and typing or accounting.	ya9ni. waziife kitaabiyye, mitil tarjame, wṭibaa9a, 'aw muḥaa sabaat.
fill out	9abba bi9abbi
official, formal	rasmi
Fine. But you'll have to fill out a formal application.	ṭayyib, bass, laazim t9abbi ṭalab rasmi.
I'm ready.	ḥaaḍir.
information	ma9luumaat
Well then, could you give me the necessary information?	mumkin 'izan ta9ṭiini lma9luumaat llaazme?
reply, answer	jawaab
prompt, quick	musta9jal
Because I'd like to give you a prompt reply.	li'anno baḥibb 'a9ṭiik jawaab musta9jal.
generous	kariim
What's your name?	l'ism lkariim?
Farid Hanna Abu Salman.	fariid ḥanna 'abu salmaan.
How old are you?	'addees 9umrak?
Twenty-five.	xamse w9iṣriin sane.
date	taariix
birth	wilaade

What's the date of your birth?	ṣuu taariix lwilaade?
February fourth, 1933.	'arba9a ṣbaaṭ, sant 'alf wtisi9 miyye willaate witlaatiin.
place	makaan
All right. Where's your place of birth?	ṭayyib. makaan lwilaade, feen?
Bethlehem.	beet laḥim.
father	waalid
Your father's name?	'ism lwaalid?
Hanna Abu Salman.	ḥanna 'abu salmaan.
address	9unwaan
Your father's address?	9unwaan lwaalid?
street	ṣaari9
star	najme
Star Street, Bethlehem.	ṣaari9 nnajme, beet laḥim.
mother	waalde
Your mother's name?	'ism lwaalde?
Huda Abu Salman.	huda 'abu salmaan.
self, same	nafs or zaat
I suppose it's also the same address, isn't it?	'azunn kamaan nafs l9unwaan, miṣ heek?
Yes.	na9am.
Your nationality?	ljinsiyye?
Jordanian	'urduni.
certificate, testimony	ṣhaade, pl. -aat

pertaining to knowledge	9ilmi
What are your diplomas ?	šuu šhaadaatak l9ilmiyye ?
I have a B. A. from the	ma9i bii 'ee mniijaam9a
American University in Beirut.	l'ameerkiyye fii beeruut.
he graduated	txarraaj bitxarraaj
What year were you graduated?	'ayy sane txarraaj ?
The year 1954.	sant 'alf witiisi9 miyye w'arba9a
	wxamsiin.
specialty	taxaššus
What was your major ?	šuu kaan taxaššusak ?
Accounting.	m(u)haasabe.
Where did you work after you	feen štağalt ba9id maa txarraaj ?
graduated ?	
I was working in the	kunt 'aštğil fii daa'irat
Accounting Department of the	lmuħaasabe ma9 lhukuume.
Government.	
Why did you leave your work?	leeš tarakt šuğlak ?
wages, salary	ma9aaš
small, slight	'aliil
My salary was low.	ma9aaši kaan 'aliil.
hope	t'ammal bit'ammal
And I hope to find a better job.	wbat'ammal 'alaa'i waziife
	'ahsan.
authority, reference	marja9, pl. maraaji9
Could you give us three	mumkin ta9tiina tlat maraaji9 ?
references ?	

dean	9amiid
Yes. The Dean of the	na9am. 9amiid jaami9at
University of Beirut, and the	beeruut, wmudiir daa'irat
director of the Accounting	lmuħaasabe, wra'iis baladiyyit
Department, and the mayor	beet laħim.
of Bethlehem.	
thankful, grateful	mamnuun
Fine. Thank you very much.	ṭayyib. mamnuunak ktiir.
return, send back	radd birudd
I hope to send you an answer	nšaal/a baruddillak jawaab,
in two weeks.	ba9id 'usbuu9een.

Additional vocabulary

1. The months of the year

January	kaanuun taani, kaanuun ttaani
February	šbaat
March	'aaḍaar
April	niisaan
May	'ayyaar
June	ħzeeraan
July	tammuuz
August	'aab
September	'ayluul
October	tišriin 'awwal, tišriin l'awwal
November	tišriin taani, tišriin ttaani
December	kaanuun 'awwal, kaanuun
	l'awwal

2. Occupations and professions

Accountant	m(u)haasib
Contractor	mit9ahhid
Editor	m(u)harrir
Engineer	m(u)handis
Judge	'aaqi
Lawyer	m(u)haami
Merchant	taajir
Translator	m(u)tarjim

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

I. Connective maa

Where were you living before you came here ?	feen kunt saakin, 'abil maa 'ijiit lahoon ?
Where did you work after you were graduated ?	feen štağalt ba9id maa txarraj!
I'll give you as much as you want.	ba9tiik 'add maa biddak.
As you wish.	mitil maa biddak.
I'll go wherever I find work.	feen maa balaa'i šuğul, baruuh.
Let him do whatever he wants to.	xallii yi9mal šuu maa biddo.
Come here whenever you want to.	ta9aal lahoon, 'eemta maa biddak.

Do it however you want to.	'i9malo kiif maa biddak.
Whenever you want, I'll go with you.	wa't maa biddak, baruuh ma9ak.
The day that you come here we'll go visit him.	yoom maa btiji lahoon, bin-ruuh nzuuro.
I went to Egypt the year that I got my diploma.	ruht 9alamašir, sant maa 'axatt ššhaade.
I'll eat at the place where you eat.	maħall maa btaakul baakul.

GRAMMAR

I. Connective maa

Connective maa occurs after prepositions, question words, and certain nouns of time or place. Here this particle is a connective between the preposition, question word, etc. and an immediately following sentence.

After prepositions, this particle has no convenient translation ; both ba9id and ba9id maa mean « after. » Connective maa simply converts the preposition into a conjunction joining two separate sentences : feen kunt saakin 'abil maa 'ijiit lahoon ? *where were you living before you came here ?*

After question words, maa can be translated as «-ever» : feen maa *wherever*, šuu maa *whatever*, kiif maa *however* : ta9aal lahoon 'eemta maa biddak *come here whenever you want to*.

After nouns of time, maa means « when » or « that » : yoom maa *the day when* ; sant maa *the year that*. After nouns of place it means « where » or « that » : maħall maa *the place where*, saa9it maa *the hour that*.

Note that before connective maa feminine T-nouns appear in the combining form : sant maa, saa9it maa.

2. Verbs of Form VII

The characteristic of verbs of Form VII is a prefixed n-. There are four variants of the pattern, depending on the root type.

- (1) Regular roots. Suffix tense n-a-a-; prefix tense n-(i)-i-.

root

bṣṭ	nbaṣaṭ	binbṣiṭ	<i>be happy</i>
fṭḥ	nfataḥ	binfṭiḥ	<i>be opened</i>

- (2) Doubled roots. Suffix and prefix tense patterns identical : n-a--.

ḥbb	nḥabb	binḥabb	<i>be liked</i>
9dd	n9add	bin9add	<i>be counted</i>

- (3) Hollow roots. Suffix and prefix tense patterns are identical : n-aa-.

'wl	n'aal	bin'aal	<i>be said</i>
zwr	nzaar	binzaar	<i>be visited</i>

- (4) Weak roots. Suffix tense n-a-a ; prefix tense n--i, or n-a-a (identical with the prefix tense), depending on the verb.

ḥky	nḥaka	binḥaka	<i>be said</i>
ṭwy	nṭawa	binṭwi	<i>be folded</i>

Matching most Form I verbs that are regularly accompanied by a direct object (e.g. fataḥo *he opened it*) is a Form VII verb that indicates the subject as being acted upon (e.g. nfataḥ *it was opened*). Used in the negative, these verbs often have the meaning « not able to be done » : lbaab maa binfṭiḥ *the door can't be opened*.

3. Verbs of Form VIII

The characteristic of verbs of Form VIII is an infix -t- after the first consonant of the root. There are four variants of the pattern, depending upon the root type.

- (1) Regular roots. Suffix tense -ta-a- ; prefix tense -t(i)-i-.

root

ṣḡl	ṣtaḡal	biṣṭḡil	<i>work</i>
jm9	jtama9	bijṭmi9	<i>meet</i>
nxb	ntaxab	bintxib	<i>elect</i>

- (2) Doubled roots. Suffix and prefix tense patterns identical : -ta--.

hmm	htamm	bihtamm	<i>be concerned</i>
-----	-------	---------	---------------------

- (3) Hollow roots. Suffix and prefix tense patterns identical : -taa-.

ḥwj	ḥtaaj	biḥtaaj	<i>need</i>
šw'	štaa'	bištaa'	<i>long for</i>

- (4) Weak roots. Suffix tense -ta-a ; prefix tense -t-i.

šry	štara	bištri	<i>buy</i>
-----	-------	--------	------------

- (5) With roots whose first consonant is w, the combination wt becomes tt.

wf'	ttafa'	bittfi'	<i>agree</i>
wḥd	ttahad	bitthid	<i>be united</i>

Form VIII verbs have no apparent systematic correlations of meaning, either within the class, or with other verbs.

4. Verbs of Form IX

The characteristic of verbs of Form IX is doubling of the last consonant of the root. There are no variants of the pattern.

(1) Regular and Hollow roots (Doubled and Weak do not occur). Suffix and prefix tense patterns identical : --a--.

root

hmr	hmarr	bihmarr	become red
swd	swadd	biswadd	become black
byd	byaqq	bibyaqq	become white

The meanings of Form IX verbs relate to colors and physical defects.

5. Verbs of Form X

The characteristic of verbs of Form X is prefixed sta- before the first consonant of the root. There are four variants of the pattern, depending on the root type.

(1) Regular roots. Suffix tense sta-a-; prefix tense sta-i-.

root

9ml	sta9mal	bista9mil	use
-----	---------	-----------	-----

(2) Doubled roots. Suffix tense sta-a-; prefix tense st-i-.

h"	staḥa"	bistḥi"	deserve
9dd	sta9add	bist9idd	get ready

(3) Hollow roots. Suffix tense sta-aa-; prefix tense st(a)-ii-.

rwḥ	staraaḥ	bistriiḥ	rest
šwr	stašaar	bistašiir	consult

210 (Unit 22)

(4) Weak roots. Suffix tense sta--a; prefix tense sta--i.

hlw	staḥla	bistaḥli	find nice
-----	--------	----------	-----------

Form X verbs have no apparent systematic correlations of meaning, either within the class, or with other verbs.

6. Summary of the verb

The following is a schematic summary of the ten Forms of the verb, showing the suffix tense and prefix tense. For illustration we use the imaginary root fks, which stands for any occurring Regular root.

I	fakas	bifkas, bifkus, bifkis
II	fakkas	bifakkis
III	faakas	bifaakis
IV	'afkas	bifkis
V	tfakkas	bitfakkas
VI	tfaakas	bitfaakas
VII	nfakas	binfkis
VIII	ftakas	biftkis
IX	fkass	bifkass
X	stafkas	bistafkis

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following questions.

šuu 'ism lli 'addam ṭalab	feen t9allam ?
šugul fil'unṣliyye ?	šuu ma9o šhaadaat ?

(Unit 22) 211

suu lwaziife lli biddo yyaaha? 'eemta txarraj?
 'addees 9umro? suu kaan taxaşşuŝo?
 min feen huwwe? feen ştağal ba9id maa txarraj?
 suu jinsiyyto? lees tarak şuğlo?

2. In the following sentences change the suffix tense verb forms to the corresponding prefix tense.

'addam řalab şuğul. 'eemta txarraj?
 miin saaf bil'awwal? suu kaan taxaşşuŝo?
 l'unşul 'aabalo şaxşıyyan. 'eemta 'ajaa jawaab?
 9abba řalab rasmi.

3. For each of the following verbs in the suffix tense « he » form give the prefix tense « he » form. The first example of each group is completed, and all the verbs within any one group work the same way.

tşarraf	bitşarraf	xalla	bixalli
t9allam		ra''a	
tfarraj		9abba	
t'ammal		kaffa	
jtama9	bijtmı9	řařř	biřuřř
řtağal		řann	
ntaxab		radd	
ftakar			

UNIT 23 • Goods and services.

PATTERN SENTENCES

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. At the hotel | fil'uteel |
| person | řaxş |
| bath(room) | řammaam |
| private | xuşuuşı |
| I want a room for two with private bath. | biddi 'uuđa lařaxşeen, ma9 řammaam xuşuuşı. |
| wake the morning | fayya' bifayyi' |
| Wake me at seven o'clock in the morning. | řşubuh |
| | fayyi'ni ssaa9a sab9a řşubuh. |
| 2. With the maid | ma9 lxaadme or ma9 řşaan9a |
| wash sheet | ğassal biğassil |
| Wash the sheets. | řarřaf, pl. řaraaşif |
| hang up roof | ğassli řşaraaşif. |
| Hang the wash on the roof. | 9alla' bi9alli' |
| sweep kitchen | řařıř |
| | 9all'i lğasiil 9ařşařıř. |
| | kaşnas bikannis |
| | mařbax |

Sweep the kitchen.	kaansi lmaṭbax.
clean	naqqaf binaqqif
Clean the house.	naqqfi lbeet.
prepare	ḥaqqar biḥaqqdir
Prepare dinner for eight o'clock.	ḥaqqdri l9aša lassaa9a tamaanyc.
throw out	zatt bizitt
basket	salle
garbage	zbaale
Throw this into the garbage can.	zitti haadi bsallt zzbaale.
wipe off	masah bimsah
floor	'arḍ
Wipe off the floor.	'imsahi l'arḍ.
wash down	ṣaṭaf buṣṭuf
Wash down the floor.	'uṣuṭfi l'arḍ.
iron	kawa bikwi
Iron the shirts.	'ikwi l'umṣaan.
turn	daar bidiir
attention	baal
Take care of the child.	diiri baalik 9aṣṣabi.

3. At the barber's

cut	'aṣṣ bi'uṣṣ
hair	ša9ir
How do you want me to cut your hair?	kiif biddak 'a'uṣṣillak ša9rak?

214 (Unit 23)

lighten	xaffaf bixaffif
above	foo'
please (lit. by your life)	biḥyaatak
Please shorten it a bit on top.	biḥyaatak, xaffifi yyaa šwayy min foo'.
comb	maṣṣaṭ bimassit
dry	naasif
Please comb it dry.	min faḍlak, maṣṣto 9annaasif.
shave	ḥala' biḥli'
beard	da'in or liḥye
Do you want a shave?	biddak tiḥli' da'nak?
favor	ma9ruuf
If you please.	'iza bli9mal ma9ruuf.
No, thanks.	la'. mamnuun.
May it be to your pleasure (expression said to someone who has just had a haircut, a shave, or a bath).	na9iiman.
May God favor you (in reply).	'alla yin9im 9aleek.

4. At the presser's

laundry	9ind lkawwa
ironing, pressing	ḡasiil
I have five shirts to be washed and ironed.	kawi
And three pairs of pants to be cleaned and pressed.	fii 9indi xamis 'umṣaan, ḡasiil wkawi.
	witlat banṭaloonaat, tanḍiif wkawi.

(Unit 23) 215

When do you want them ?

The day after tomorrow, if possible.

All right. Would you like me to send them to your house or will you come and get them ?

while, when

returning

about

I'll come and get them on my way back from work, say about five o'clock.

5. At the post office

stamp

regular, ordinary

airmail

Please give me five regular stamps and ten airmail stamps.

registered

I have an airmail letter that I want to send registered to America.

need

'eemta biddak yyaahum ?

ba9id bukra, 'iza mumkin

ṭayyib, ḥaaḍir. biḥibb 'ab9at

lak yyaahum 9albeet, willa

btiiji taaxudhum ?

w-/wi-

raaji9

ḥawaali

baaji 'aaxudhum, w'ana raaji9

min ššugul. ya9ni, ḥawaali

ssaa9a xamse.

filbooṣṭa

ṭaabi9, pl. ṭawaabi9

9aadi

bariid jawwi

min faḍlak, 'a9ṭiini xamis

ṭawaabi9 9aadiyye, w9aṣar ṭa-

waabi9 bariid jawwi.

msajjal or msoogar

fii ma9i maktuub ṭayyaara,

biddi 'ab9ato msajjal

la'ameerka.

ḥtaaj biḥtaaj

How much will it need in the way of stamps ?

'addees bihtaaj ṭawaabi9 ?

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Active participles of simple verbs

Where are you staying ?

Where were you living ?

I've heard about him.

We need some vegetables.

He's a clerk at the Embassy.

What school did he put his children in ?

I'm going home.

I'm not free now.

This hotel is very expensive.

He's coming tomorrow.

feen-naazil ?

feen kunt saakin ?

'ana saami9 9anno.

laazimna šwayyit xuḍra.

huwwe kaatib fissaafaara.

fii 'ayy madrase ḥaatit wlaado?

'ana raayih 9albeet.

miš faadi halla.

haada l'uteel gaali ktiir.

huwwe jaay bukra.

2. Active participles of complex verbs

He is a teacher in the government school.

He's going tomorrow.

That's not possible.

huwwe m9allim fii madrast ḥukuume.

huwwe msaafir bukra.

haada miš mumkin.

The important thing is for me to see him today.	lmuhimm 'ašufo lyoom.
Who's the director of the company?	miin mudiir šsirke ?
I'm sorry.	'ana mit'assif.
I came late.	'ijit mit'axxir.
I was thinking that you were coming.	kunt miftkir 'innak jaay.
Why are you in a hurry?	leeš mista9jil ?
I'm ready.	'ana mist9idd.

GRAMMAR

1. Participles

Arabic has a class of words called *participles*. The typical participle correlates with an underlying verb, has the same root as the verb, has a predictable pattern, and has a verb-like meaning. There are two kinds of participles : *active* and *passive*. Not every verb has both.

Participles are typically adjectives, but sometimes function as nouns, often with a specialized meaning and a plural different from the adjective plural. Occasionally they function as verbs.

2. The active participle

The active participle of the simple verb has the pattern -aa-i-. This pattern has three variants, depending on the root type.

(1) Regular and Doubled roots : -aa-i-.

root			underlying verb	
ktb	kaatib	writing	katab	write
rj9	raaji9	returning	riji9	return
hṭṭ	ḥaṭṭiṭ	putting	ḥaṭṭ	put
'šš	'aašiṣ	cutting	'ašš	cut

(2) Hollow roots : -aayi-.

rwh	raayih	going	raaḥ	go
šwf	šaayif	seeing	šaaf	see
by9	baayi9	selling	baa9	sell

(3) Weak roots : -aa-i-.

b'y	baa'i	remaining	bi'i	remain
mšy	maaši	walking	maša	walk

Active participles of complex verbs have a stem pattern that is identical with the pattern of the prefix tense, except for Forms V and VI, where the stem vowel is *i*. To this stem is prefixed m-/mi- (occasionally mu-).

Form			underlying verb	
II	m9allim	teacher	bi9allim	teach
	muḥarrir	editor	biḥarrir	edit
III	msaafir	traveling	bisaafir	travel
	muḥaasib	accountant	biḥaasib	reckon
IV	mumkin	possible	bimkin	be possible
	muhimm	important	bihimm	concern

	mudiir	director	bitiir	direct
V	mit'axxir	late	bit'axxar	be late
	mit9allim	educated	bit9allam	be taught
VIII	miftkir	thinking	biftkir	think
	mištaa'	longing	bištaa'	long for
X	mista9jil	in a hurry	bista9jil	hurry
	mist9idd	ready	bist9idd	get ready

Active participles function as verbal adjectives, as nouns, and occasionally as verbs. As adjectives, they have the usual masculine, feminine and plural forms.

masc.	fem.	plural
kaatib	kaatbe	kaatbiin
ħaatiṭ	ħaatiṭa	ħaatiṭiin
raayih	raayha	raayhiin
baa'i	baa'ye	baa'yiin
msaafir	msaafre	msaafriin
mit9allim	mit9allme	mit9allmiin
mista9jil	mista9ijle	mista9ijliin

Some active participles indicate an action taking place in the present and to be continued in the future, or going to take place in the future: ween raayih? *where are you going?* These mostly correlate with verbs that mean motion or remaining in one place.

Other active participles indicate an action that began or took place in the past: 'ana saami9 9anno *I've heard about him*. Here the participle is (apparently) equivalent to a suffix tense verb.

Functioning as nouns, they frequently mean «the one who

does so-and-so», and sometimes have a plural different from the adjective.

kaatib	kuttaab	writer
zaabiṭ	zubbāaṭ	officer
9aamil	9ummaal	worker
m9allim	m9allmiin	teacher
msaa9id	msaa9diin	assistant
muħaami	muħaamiin	lawyer
mudiir	mudara(a')	director

DRILLS

- Go through the following sentences changing the masculine singular active participles first to feminine singular and then to plural, changing anything in the rest of the sentence that needs changing.

huwwe saami9 9anni.	'eemtan msaafir 9al'uds?
feen naazil huwwe?	'aja mit'axxir.
'eemtan raaji9 9abeeruut?	feen mit9allim huwwe?
feen raayih?	huwwe mista9jil ktiir.
huwwe waa'if hoon.	'ana mit'assif.
'eemtan bitkuun ħaadir?	

- Give the active participle for each of the following verbs. The first example of each group is completed, and all the participles within any one group work the same way.

katab	kaatib	lizim	laazim
'a9ad		libis	

daras		rji9	
fatah		simi9	
sakan		tili9	
tarak		9imil	
zakar		9irif	
hat	haati	maša	maši
'ašš		bada	
habb		haka	
raah	raayih	fidi	fađi
'aal		'iri	
daar		bi'i	
jaab		gili	
šaaf		nisi	
zaar			
9allam	m9allim	xalla	mxalli
hađdar		9abba	
mašša			
nađdaf			
sadda'		t9allam	mit9allim
sakkar		t'ammal	
šarraf		t'assaf	
wa"af		t'axxar	
xallaš		txarra	
9arra		t9azzab	

UNIT 24 • From New York to Beirut.

PATTERN SENTENCES

When did you get here ?	'eemta 'ijiit lahoon ?
I've been here three days.	šarli tlat tiyyaam.
coming out	taali9
How long has it been since	'addeš šarлак taali9 min
you left America ?	'ameerka ?
past	maađi
I left on the eighteenth of last	tarakt fi taman ta9š ššahr
month.	lmaadi.
How did you come ? By air-	kiif 'ijiit ? fiťayyaara, willa
plane or by boat ?	filbaaxira ?
journey	rihle
varied	mnawwa9
Well, the journey was mixed.	wal/aahi, rrihle kaanat
	mnawwa9a.
ride	rikib birkab
I flew from New York to	rkibt řayyaara min nyuu yoork
Paris.	labaariiz.
train	treen
Then I took the train to	ba9deen 'axalt ttreen
Marseilles.	lamarsiilya.
And from Marseilles I took	wmin marsiilya, rkibt lbaaxira
the boat to Beirut.	labeeruut.

Tell me, did you like Paris ?	'ulli. 'a9jAbatak baariiz ?	One should see, for example,	laazim ysuuf, matalan, 'ašir
be visited	nzaar binzaar	the Palace of Versailles.	veršaay.
Really, that's a town to be visited.	saddi', haadi balad btinzaar.	museum	mathaf
truth	ha'ii'a	And the Louvre museum.	wmathaf lluuvr.
The truth is that it's a very lovely town.	lha'ii'a, 'inha balad hilwe ktiir.	grave, tomb	'abir
full	malyaan	And Napoleon's tomb.	w'abir naabilyoon.
garden	bustaan, pl. basatiin	memorial, monument	tizkaar
And filled with gardens.	wmalyaane basatiin.	And the Bastille.	wtizkaar lbastiil.
trees	šajar	tower	burj
side	janb, pl. jawaanib	And the Eiffel Tower.	wburj 'iifil.
road	ṭarii', pl. ṭuru'	How many days did you stay in Paris ?	kam yoom 'a9att fii baariiz ?
And trees on the sides of all the streets.	wiššajar 9ala jawaanib kull ṭṭuru'.	I stayed in Paris twenty four hours.	'a9att fii baariiz 'arba9a w9išriin saa9a.
street	šaari9, pl. šawaari9	And I would have liked to stay longer.	wkunt baḥibb 'a'9ud 'aktar.
well arranged	mrattab	And how's Marseilles ?	wkiif marsiilya ?
Also its streets are clean and well arranged.	kamaan, šawaari9ha nḍiife wimrattabe.	Well, it's not bad.	wallaahi, miš baṭṭaale.
thing	šii, pl. 'ašyaa'	But I didn't have a very good time there.	laakin 'ana maa nbaṣaṭṭ fiiha ktiir.
be able	'idir bi'dar	And where did you stop next?	wba9deen, feen wa'aftu ?
And Paris has lots of things that one can see and ought to see.	wbaariiz, fiiha 'ašyaa' ktiire, bi'dar lwaahḍad ysuufha, wlaazim ysuufha.	cemetery	ma'bara
Like what, for instance?	mitil 'eeš, ya9ni ?	We stopped in Genoa for ten hours during which we visited the cemetery.	wa'afna fii janawa 9ašir saa9aat, zurna fiiha lma'bara.
palace	'ašir		

And on the way we also visited
 Naples and Athens.
 And then we came on to
 Beirut.

wzurna kamaan fi(tarii',
 naabuli w'atiina.
 wba9deen, 'ijiina labeeruut.

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Passive participles of simple verbs

He's not well.	huwwe miš mabšuuf.
I'm busy now.	'ana mašguul halla.
What he says, goes.	kilimto masmuu9a.
That's correct.	haada mažbuuf.
I got an airmail letter today.	'ajaani lyoom maktuub ṭayyaara.
Leave the door open, please.	xalli lbaab maftuuh, min faḍlak.
I'd be very much obliged.	bakuun mamnuun ktiir.
This house is sold.	haada lbeet mabyuu9.
Bring me stuffed squash.	jibli kuusa maḥši.
Is the shirt ironed?	'amiiš makwi?

2. Passive participles of complex verbs

Why is the door closed?	leeš lbaab msakkar?
The journey was mixed.	rriḥle kaanat mnawwa9a.

The house is well arranged.	lbeet mrattab.
This is not filled out correctly.	haada miš m9abba mažbuuf.
name	'isim, pl. 'asmaa'
elected	muntaxab, pl. -iin
Do you know the names of those who were elected?	btī9raf 'asmaa' lmuntaxabiin?
I'd like to give you a prompt reply.	baḥibb 'a9tiik jawaab musta9jal.

GRAMMAR

1. The passive participle

The passive participle of the simple verb has the pattern ma-uu-. This pattern has two variants, depending on the root type.

(1) Regular, Doubled, and Hollow roots : ma-uu-.

root			underlying verb	
fth	maftuuh	open	fataḥ	open
sm9	masmuu9	heard	simi9	hear
'šš	ma'suuš	cut	'ašš	cut
ḥtṭ	maḥtuut	placed	ḥatṭ	put
by9	mabyuu9	sold	baa9	sell

(2) Weak roots : ma-i-.

ḥšy	maḥši	stuffed	ḥaša	stuff
kwy	makwi	ironed	kawa	iron

Passive participles of complex verbs have a stem pattern that is identical with the pattern of the suffix tense. To this stem is prefixed m-/mu- (occasionally mi-). Verbs of Forms V, VI, and VII rarely have passive participles. Note that Form IV loses the prefixed 'a-.

Form			underlying verb	
II	m'addam	<i>presented</i>	addam	<i>present</i>
	mrattab	<i>well arranged</i>	rattab	<i>put in order</i>
	m9abba	<i>filled out</i>	9abba	<i>fill out</i>
III	mbaarak	<i>blessed</i>	baarak	<i>bless</i>
IV	mulhaq	<i>annexed</i>	'alhaq	<i>annex</i>
VIII	muntaxab	<i>elected</i>	ntaxab	<i>elect</i>
X	musta9jal	<i>hurried</i>	sta9jal	<i>hurry</i>

These words are typically adjectives, with the usual masculine, feminine, and plural forms.

<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>plural</i>
maftuuḥ	maftuuḥa	maftuuḥiin
m9abba	m9abbaay	m9abbayiin
maḥṣi	maḥṣiyye	maḥṣiyyiin
mrattab	mrattabe	mrattabiin
mbaarak	mbaarake	mbaarakiin
mulhaq	mulhaqa	mulhaqiin
muntaxab	muntaxabe	muntaxabiin
musta9jal	musta9jale	musta9jaliin

Occasionally these words function as nouns with a specialized meaning, and sometimes with a plural different from the adjective.

maktuub	makatiib	<i>letter</i>
maṣruub	maṣruubaat	<i>alcoholic beverage</i>
mwazzaf	mwazzafiin	<i>official</i>
maḥṣi	maḥaasi	<i>stuffed vegetable</i>
mulhaq	mulhaqiin	<i>attaché</i>
mustaṣaar	mustaṣaariin	<i>counselor</i>

Occasionally no singular exists.

ma'kuulaat	<i>things to eat</i>
ma9luumaat	<i>information</i>

DRILLS

1. Give appropriate replies to the following questions based on the Pattern Sentences of this Unit.

'eemta 'aja min 'ameerka ?	ṣuu bi'dar lwaahad yṣuuf fii
kiif saafar min nyuu yoork	baariiz ?
labaariiz ?	kam saa9a 'a9ad fii baariiz ?
kiif saafar min baariiz	nbaṣaṭ kamaan fii marsiilya ?
lamarsiilya ?	wfeen wa'af fiṭṭarii', been
nbaṣaṭ fii baariiz ?	marshiilya wbeeruut ?
2. In the following sentences change the suffix tense verb forms to the corresponding prefix tense.

tarakt nyuu york yoom ssabt. 'a9att fii baariiz yoomeen.

rkibt f{ayyaara min nyuu
 yorƙ labaariiz. wa''afna fii janawa sitt
 ba9deen 'axatt ttreen saa9aat.
 lamarsiilya zurna fi{tarrii' naabuli
 wmin marsiilya rkibt lbaaxira w'atiina.
 labeeruut.

3. For each of the following verbs in the suffix tense «he» form give the prefix tense «he» form. The first example of each group is completed, and all the verbs within any one group work the same way.

katab	buktub	'akal	byaakul	kaan	bikuun
šakar		'axad		šaaf	
daras				zaar	
				'aal	
				'aam	
fihim	bifham	dabbar	bidabbir	jaab	bijiib
ṭili9		zawwar		šaar	
9irif		wa''af		baa9	
rikib		xallaş			
simi9					
'idir					

4. Give the passive participle for each of the following verbs. The first example of each group is completed, and all participles within any one group work the same way.

katab	maktuub	simi9	masmuu9
fataḥ		9imil	

'aṭa9	9irif
samaḥ	fihim
sa'al	
ḥatt	maḥtuut
'aşş	naqqaf
ḥabb	sadda'
radd	9alla'
	sakkar
	'addam
	faşşal

PATTERN SENTENCES

program	minhaaj, pl. manaahij
I heard the program of the new cabinet on the two o'clock news bulletin.	smi9t minhaaj lwizaara jjdiide, fii našrit ssaa9a tinteen.
appearing	zaahir
And it looks like a good program.	wizzaahir 'inno minhaaj kwayyis.
pass by	faat bifuut
loss	xsaara
What a shame ! I missed hearing it.	yaa xsaara. faatni 'asma9o.
Could you tell me what was most important in it ?	mumkin t'ulli, šuu 'ahamm maa fii ?
plan	xiṭṭa, pl. xiṭaṭ
support	'ayyad bi'ayyid
cause, question	qaḍiyye, pl. qaḍaaya
The plan of the government is to support the Arab cause.	xiṭṭit lhukuume, 'iḩha t'ayyid lqaḍaaya l9arabiyye.
maintain	haafaḩ biḩaafiz
relation	9alaa'a, pl. 9alaa'aat
state, nation	dawle, pl. duwal

major	kubra
And at the same time to maintain good relations with the great powers.	wfii nafs lwa't, ṭhaafiz 9al9a-laa'aat ṭṭayybe, ma9 dduwal lkubra.
informal term of address (lit. our master)	yaa siidna
mention	zakar buzkur
project	mašruu9, pl. mašaarii9
And then, sir, they mentioned the new projects that they intend to carry out.	wba9deen, yaa siidna, zakaru lmašaarii9 jjdiide lli bidhum yi9maluuha.
arming	tasliih
army	jeeš, pl. jyuus
constructing	'inšaa'
factory, plant	ma9mal, pl. ma9aamil
For example, arming the army, and constructing war plants.	matalan, tasliih ljeeš, w'inšaa' ma9aamil 9askariyye.
organizing	tanziim
department	daa'ira, pl. dawaa'ir
reviving	'in9aaš
industry	šinaa9a
And organizing the government departments, and reviving the national industry.	wtanziim dawaa'ir lhukuume, w'in9aaš ššinaa9a lwaṭaniyye.
expanding	tawsii9

movement	ḥarake
commercial	tijaari
economic	'iqtisaaḍi
And expanding commercial and economic activity.	wtawsii9 ḥarake ttijaariyye wiliqtisaaḍiyye.
lowering	taxfiḍ
tax	ḍariibe, pl. ḍaraa'ib
And lowering taxes.	wtaxfiḍ ḍḍaraa'ib.
program	barnaamaj, pl. baraamij
teaching	ta9liim
Then they spoke about the education programs.	ba9deen ḥaku 9an baraamij tta9liim.
promise	wa9ad byuu9id
industrial	ṣinaa9i
agricultural	ziraa9i
They promised to open industrial and commercial and agricultural schools.	wa9adu yiflaḥu madaaris ṣinaa9iyye, wtijaariyye, wziraa9iyye.
compulsory	'ijbaari
And to make education compulsory.	wiyxallu tta9liim 'ijbaari.

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

I. Verbal nouns : Form I verbs

I have trouble in writing. 9indi ṣ9uube filiktaabe.

234 (Unit 25)

I'm not so bad in reading.	fili'raay, miṣ baṭṭaal.
I'm very pleased at your visit.	'ana masruur jiddan bizyaaritekum.
They take turns at the work.	bitnaawabu l9amal.
The shirt needs ironing.	l'amiṣ biddo kawī.
I'm honored to have met you.	tṣarraafna mma9riflak.

2. Verbal nouns : Form II verbs

The car needs repairing.	ssayyaara bidha taṣliih.
The watch needs cleaning.	ssaa9a bidha tanḍiif.
He works in the editing division.	biṣṭġil fii qism ttahriir.
Arming the army.	taṣliih ljees.
Organizing the government departments.	tanziim dawaa'ir lhukuume.
Expanding commercial activity.	tawsii9 ḥarake ttijaariyye.
Where is the Ministry of National Education ?	feen wizaart ttarbiye lwaṭaniyye ?

GRAMMAR

I. Verbal nouns

Arabic has a class of words called *verbal nouns*. The typical verbal noun correlates with an underlying verb, has the same root

(Unit 25) 235

as the verb, has (with storable exceptions) a predictable pattern, and has a verb-like meaning.

Many verbal nouns have two kinds of meaning. One is the abstract activity of the verb without reference to time: *zyaara visiting*; in this usage it has no plural. The other is a more concrete meaning: *zyaara a visit*; in this usage it has a plural: *zyaaraat visits*.

The verbal noun may be translated by an English infinitive, participle, or noun: *ssayyaara bidha tašliih the car needs to be repaired, ...needs repairing, ...needs repair*.

(1) Regular, Doubled, and Hollow roots: ta--ii-

root		underlying verb		
ndf	tanḍiif	cleaning	naḍḍaf	clean
ṣlḥ	taṣliih	repairing	ṣallaḥ	repair
ḥrr	taḥriir	editing	ḥarrar	edit
zwd	tazwiid	supplying	zawwad	supply

(2) Weak roots: ta--iye.

rby	tarbiye	education	rabba	educate
-----	---------	-----------	-------	---------

2. Verbal nouns of simple verbs

Verbal nouns of simple verbs may have any one of a large number of patterns. There is no predictability.

verbal noun		underlying verb	
ktaabe	writing	katab	write
zyaara	visiting	zaar	visit
'raay(e)	reading	'iri	read
ḡamal	work	ḡimil	do
hazz	shaking	hazz	shake
kawi	ironing	kawa	iron
maḡrife	knowing	ḡirif	know

3. Verbal nouns of complex verbs: Form II

Verbal nouns of complex verbs are very regular. For Form II the pattern is ta--ii-, with two variants, depending on the root type.

PATTERN SENTENCES

side, aspect	naahye, pl. nawaahi
helping	m(u)saa9ade
fallah, peasant	fallaah, pl. -iin
And another side of the program is helping the fallahin.	wnaahye taanye filminhaaj, musaa9adat lfallaahiin.
loan	qird, pl. quruud
financial	maali
The government has promised to give them financial loans.	wa9dat lhukuume ta9tiihum quruud maaliyye.
hope	'amal
improving	tahsiin
season	mawsim
In the hope of improving the harvest.	9ala 'amal tahsiin lmawsim zziraa9i.
irrigation	rayy
And then they have projects for irrigation.	wba9deen, 9indhum ma9aarii9 lirrayy.
rail	sikke, pl. sikak
iron	hadiid
harbor, port	miina, pl. mawaani

And repairing the railways and the harbors.	wta9liih sikak lhadiid, wilmawaani.
concern	'ihlimaam
matter, affair	'amir, pl. 'umuur
And concern for matters of health.	wilihlimaam fii 'umuur s9ihha.
increase	zaad biziid
number	9adad
And they're going to increase the number of hospitals.	wraayhiin yziidu 9adad lmusta9ayaat.
combat	kaafah bikaafih
disease	marad, pl. 'amraad
contagious	saari
And combat contagious diseases.	wiykaafhu l'amraad ssaarye.
shortly, soon	9an 'ariib
carry out	'ajra bijri
amendment, modification	ta9diil, pl. -aat
law	qaanuun, pl. qawaaniin
parliamentary	niyaabi
And soon they're going to carry out amendments to the parliamentary election laws.	w9an 'ariib, raayhiin yijru ta9diilaat fii qawaaniin lintixaabaat nniyaabiyye
free	hurr
So that the elections will be free.	lahatta tkuun lintixaabaat hurra.

magnificent

9ažiim

GRAMMAR

That certainly is a magnificent plan.

saddi'. haada minhaaj 9ažiim.

apply, put into practice

ṭabba' biṭabbi'

application

taṭbii'

practical

9amali

But I hope they'll put it into actual practice.

bass nšaa/la yṭabb'uu taṭbii' 9amali.

STRUCTURE SENTENCES

1. Verbal nouns : Form III verbs

Ahmad works in the Accounting Department.
Helping the fallahin.
Combating diseases.

'ahmad bištġil fii daa'irat lmuḥaasabe.
musaa9adat lfallaahiin.
mukaafahat l'amraaḍ.

2. Verbal nouns : Form IV verbs

It's no inconvenience at all.
Reviving the national industry.
Constructing war plants.

maa fii 'iz9aaḥ 'abadan.
'in9aaš ššinaa9a lwaṭaniyye.
'inšaa' ma9aamil 9askariyye.

3. Verbal nouns : Form V verbs

He has an upset stomach.
What was your specialty?

ma9o talabbuk mi9de.
šuu kaan taxašsušak ?

4. Verbal nouns : Form VIII verbs

Today the elections begin.
Reviving the national economy.
Concern for matters of health.

lyoom btibda lintixaabaat.
'in9aaš liqtišaaḍ lwaṭani.
lihtimaam fii 'umuur ššiḥḥa.

1. Verbal nouns of complex verbs : Forms III—X

Verbal nouns of Forms III—X are relatively rare in the kind of Arabic described in this book. The following list illustrates only the patterns that occur with Regular and Doubled roots.

Form			underlying verb
III	musaa9ade	helping	saa9ad help
IV	'in9aaš	reviving	'an9aš revive
V	taxašsuš	specialization	txaššaš specialize
VI	talaa9ub	being deceitful	tlaa9ab be deceitful
VII	'infjaar	exploding	nfajar explode
VIII	'ijtimaā9	meeting	jtama9 meet
IX	'ihmiraar	redness	hmarr become red
X	'istiqlaal	independence	staqall be independent

PATTERN SENTENCES

1. B : Mr. Batte ; H : Mr. Haddad ; M : Maid

- M : Hello ? Who's speaking ? haloo ? miin 9ambihki ?
 B : Is this Mr. Haddad's hoon beet ssayyid haddaad ?
 house ?
 M : Yes, who do you want ? na9am. miin bitriid ?
 B : I'd like to speak to Mr. baħibb 'ahki ma9 ssayyid
 George Haddad. joorj haddaad.
 M : Who wants him ? miin biddo yyaa ?
 B : William Batte. I'm an wilyam baat. 'ana mulħaq
 attaché at the American fissaafaara l'ameerkiyye.
 Embassy.
 present mawjuud
 Is Mr. George at home ? ssayyid joorj mawjuud ?
 M : One minute. I'll see. d'ii'a lašuuf.
 B : If you please. min faqlik.
 H : Hello, Mr. Batte. How haloo, mistir baat. kiif ħaalak ?
 are you ?
 B : Fine, thanks. How are you ? mabşuuṭ, lħamdilla. kiif ħaalak
 'inte ?
 H : Fine, praise God. nuşkur 'alla. mabşuuṭ.

242 (Unit 27)

telephone

talfan bitalfin

B : I've called you several
 times, but there wasn't
 any answer.

talfantillak 9iddit marraat, bass
 maa kaan fii jawaab.

vacation

furṣa

H : Well, I was on vacation
 last week, and I wasn't
 here.

saddi'. kaan 9indi furṣa l'usbuu9
 Imaaḍi, wmaa kunt hoon.

B : I'd like very much to see
 you, if possible.

baħibb ktiir 'ašuufak, 'iza
 mumkin.

H : Come visit us whenever
 you want.

tfaḍḍal zuurna wa't maa bitriid.

You're most welcome.

'ahlan wasahlan flik.

evening

l9aşıyye

B : I'll come tomorrow eve-
 ning about eight o'clock.

* baaji bukra l9aşıyye, ħawaali
 ssaa9a tamaanye.

H : Fine.

bitşarraf.

B : Good-by.

ma9 ssalaame.

H : Good-by.

'alla ysallmak.

2. K : Mr. Key ; M : Maid

K : Hello ?

haloo ?

M : Hello ? Who's this ?

haloo ? miin ħaḍirtak ?

K : I'm Major Key. Is this Mr.
 Salameh's house ?

'ana meejar kii. hoon beet
 ssayyid salaame ?

(Unit 27) 243

number	numra
wrong (invariable adj.)	ġalaṭ
M : I'm sorry. Wrong number.	mit'assfe. numra ġalaṭ.

3. B : Mr. Black ; K : Khalil ; O : Operator ; M : Maid

B : Hello, hello ? This is Mr. Black.	haloo, haloo ? hoon mistir blaak.
Please give me 59378.	'a9tiini, min faḍlik, xamse tis9a tlaate sab9a tamaanye.
answer	radd birudd
try	jarrab bijarrib
O : One minute, please.	d'ii'a, min faḍlak.
I've telephoned twice, Mr. Black, but they don't answer.	talfant marrteen, mistir blaak, bass maa biruddu.
If you'll wait a little longer, I'll try again.	'iza btistanna šwayy, bajarrib marra taanye.
B : If you please.	'i9mali ma9ruuf.
O : Mr. Black, go ahead now.	mistir blaak, tfaḍḍal 'ihki.
B : Hello. Is Mr. Khalil there?	haloo. ssayyid xaliil mawjuud?
M : Yes. One minute, please.	na9am. d'ii'a, min faḍlak.
K : Hello ? Who's speaking ?	haloo ? miin 9ambihki ?
father's brother	9amm
request	ṭalab buṭlub
arrive	wiṣil byuuṣal

244 (Unit 27)

B : I'm James Black, a friend of your cousin Elias in Detroit.	'ana jeemz blaak, ṣaahib ibin 9ammak lyaas fii ditrooyt.
And he asked me to call you when I arrived in Beirut.	whuwwe ṭalab minni 'atalfinlak lamma buuṣal labeeruut.

(The connection is suddenly cut off)

B : Hello, hello, hello?	haloo, haloo, haloo ?
--------------------------	-----------------------

(To the operator)

line	xaṭṭ
Why did you cut off the line ?	lees 'aṭa9ti lxaṭṭ ?
O : I'm sorry. I thought you'd finished.	mit'assfe. ftakartak xallaṣt.
One minute, I'll give you the line again.	d'ii'a halla ba9tiik lxaṭṭ min jdiid.

4. O : Mr. Oakes; S: Secretary

S : Hello ? Who's speaking ?	haloo ? miin 9ambihki ?
O : This is Fred Oakes.	'ana fredd 'ooks.
I'd like to speak to Mr. Munir Al-Halabi.	bahibb 'ahki ma9 ssayyid muniir lhalabi.
S : He's not here now.	huwwe miš mawjuud halla.
O : When will he be back ?	'eemta birja9 ?

(Unit 27) 245

message	xabar
S : He'll be back at three.	birja9 ssaa9a tlaate.
Would you like to leave a message for him ?	bitriid titriklo xabar ?
O : Yes, I'd like to make an appointment with him for tomorrow morning.	na9am. baħibb 'a9mal maw9id ma9o labukra şşubuh.
S : Would ten o'clock be all right ?	ssaa9a 9ašra, mniiħ ?
O : Very good. Thank you.	ktiir mniiħ. mamnuun.

5. B : Mr. Batte; S : Secretary

electricity	kahraba
S : Hello ? This is the Electric Company.	ħaloo ? hoon širkit lkahraba.
B : I'd like to speak to Mr. Nadim Haddad, please.	baħibb 'aħki ma9 ssayyid nadiim ħaddaad, min faḍlik.
transfer	ħawwal biħawwil
S : Mr. Nadim is on another line.	ssayyid nadiim 9axaṭṭ taani.
I'll transfer you to him.	halla baħawwlak 9alee.

(Unit 27) 246

UNIT 28 • A Juha story.

PATTERN SENTENCES

world	9aalam
donkey	ħmaar
The world and Juha's donkey.	l9aalam wiħmaar juħa.
monk	raahib, pl. ruhbaan
There were three monks who were traveling.	fii tlat ruhbaan, kaanu msaafriin.
whenever	kull maa
discuss	tbaaħas bitbaaħas
learned man	9aalim, pl. 9ulama
And every time they arrived at a town they used to hold discussions with the learned men there .	wkull maa wişlu labalad, kaanu yitbaaħasu ma9 l9ulama lli fiiha.
famous	maşhuur
One time they arrived at a town that they had heard was famous for its learned men.	marra wişlu labalad, sim9u 'inha maşhuura b9ulamaaha.
sultan	şulṭaan
They went and visited the sultan there.	raaħu zaaru şşulṭaan fiiha.
minister of state	waziir, pl. wuzara

(Unit 28) 247

propose	qtarah biqtriḥ
call	naada binaadi
dispute	jaadal bijaadil
One of the ministers in the palace proposed to the sultan that he call Juha to dispute with them.	waahad min lwuzara fi l'aṣir, qtarah 9aṣṣulṭaan, 'inno ynaadi juḥa yjaadilhum.
joke, witty remark	nukte, pl. nukat
intelligence	zaka
lightness	xiffe
spirit	ruuḥ
Because Juha was famous for his witty remarks and his intelligence and his lightness of spirit.	li'anno juḥa kaan maṣhuur buukato, wzakaa, wxiffit ruuḥo.
banquet	9aziime
courtyard	saaha
The sultan made them a great banquet in the courtyard of the palace.	ṣṣulṭaan 9imillhum 9aziime kbiire fi saahṭ l'aṣir.
invite	9azam bi9zim
And invited Juha to it.	w9azam 9aleeḥa juḥa.
riding	raakib
Juha came, riding his famous donkey.	'aja juḥa raakib ḥmaaro lmaṣhuur.
dine	t9aṣṣa bit9aṣṣa

proclaim	'a9lan bi9lin
beginning	'ibtidaa'
dispute	mujaaale
After they had all dined, the sultan proclaimed the beginning of the dispute.	ba9id maa lkull t9aṣṣu, 'a9lan ṣṣulṭaan btidaa' lmujaadale.
The first monk began and asked Juha :	'aani rraahib l'awwal, wsa'al juḥa.
sheikh	ṣeex
middle	nuṣṣ
« Can you tell me, sir, where is the middle of the world ? »	btid'ar t'ulli, yaa ṣeex, ween nuṣṣ ddinya ?
hold, seize	misik bimsik
stick	9aṣa
point out	'aṣṣar bi'aṣṣir
Juha seized his stick and pointed with it to the place where his donkey had put his right hoof, and said :	'aja juḥa, misik 9aṣaato, w'aṣṣar fiha maḥall maa kaan ḥmaaro ḥaatit 'iido lyamiin, w'aal.
« Here is the middle of the world. »	hoon nuṣṣ ddinya.
The monk asked him :	sa'alo rraahib.
prove	barhan bibarhin
« But how can you prove that this is the middle of the world ? »	bass, kiif bitbarhin 'inno hoon nuṣṣ ddinya ?

measure	'aas bi'iis
He said to him : « If you don't believe me, go measure the world. »	'allo. 'iza maa bitsaddi'ni, ruuh 'iis ddinya.
talk	kalaam
increase	zyaade
deficiency	nu'saan
liar	kazzaab
«And if there is any exaggeration or deficiency in what I have said, I shall be a liar.»	w'iza kaan fii kalaami zyaade willa nu'saan, 'ana bakuun kazzaab.
The second monk began and asked :	'aam rraahib ttaani, wsa'al.
star	najme, pl. njuum
sky	sama
«All right, what is the number of the stars of the sky ? »	ṭayyib. 'addees 9adad njuum ssama ?
answer	jaawab bijaawib
Juha answered : « As many as there are hairs on my donkey. »	juha jaawab, 'add maa 9ala ḥmaari ša9ir.
be astonished	t9ajjab bit9ajjab
The monk was astonished and said :	t9ajjab rraahib, w'aal.
proof	burhaan
«And what's your proof ? »	w'suu burhaanak ?

count	9add bi9idd
Juha said to him : « If you don't believe me, go count them. »	'allo juha. 'iza maa bitsaddi'ni, ruuh 9iddha.
exceed	zaad biziid
decrease	na'aṣ bun'uṣ
right	ḥa"
I owe you, I promise you	'ilak 9alayy
« And if there should be one too many or one too few, you will be right, and I will owe you whatever you want. »	w'iza kaan bidziid willa btun'uṣ waḥde, ḥa" bikuun ma9ak. w'ilak 9alayy šuu maa biddak.
be countable	n9add bin9add
The monk answered and said : «All right, but the donkey's hairs, can they be counted ? »	riji9 rraahib, w'aal. ṭayyib. bass ša9ir liḥmaar, huwwe bin9add ?
Juha said to him : « That's for you to say. Are you asking me ? All right, how can the stars of the sky be counted ? »	'allo juha. 'uul laḥaalak. jaay ti'salni ? ṭayyib, kiif btin9add njuum ssama ?
a hair	ša9ra
After this, the third monk began and asked him : « How many hairs are there in my beard ? »	ba9idha, 'aam rraahib ttaalit, wsa'alo. kam ša9ra fii liḥiyti ?

tail	danab
Juha said to him : « As many as there are hairs in my donkey's tail. »	'alio juha. 'add maa fii danab hma: ri ša9ir.
The monk answered and said: « And what's your proof? »	riji9 rraahib w'aal. wšuu burhaanak ?
Juha said to him : «That's a simple matter. »	'allo juha. haadi mas'ale bašiita.
pluck	nataf bintif
«We'll begin plucking out the hairs of your beard, hair by hair. »	bnibda nintif ša9ir lihiytak, ša9ra ša9ra.
remove	'aam bi'iim
«And every time we remove a hair from your beard, we'll remove a hair from the donkey's tail. Then we'll see.»	wkull maa bin'iim ša9ra min lihiytak, bin'iim ša9ra min danab lihmaar. ba9deen binšuuf.
agree	ttafa' bittfi'
total	majmuu9
divorce	ʔalaa'
triple divorce	ʔʔalaa' bittlaate
my stepmother	mart 'abuuy
« If the two totals don't agree, I shall have to divorce my stepmother ».	'iza maa ttafa' lmajmuu9een, 9alayy ʔʔalaa' bittlaate min mart abuuy.

laugh	diḥik biḥak
answer	jawaab, pl. jawabaat or 'ajwibe
pleasant	laṭiif
All who were in the palace laughed and were astonished at Juha's pleasant answers.	kull lli fil'aṣir diḥku, wit9ajjabu min jawabaat juha llaṭiife.
clap the hands	za"af biza"if
become tired	ti9ib bit9ab
two hands	'ideen
And applauded him until their hands were tired.	wza"afuulo laḥatta ti9bat 'ideehum.

EXPLANATORY NOTES

Juha is the hero of an enormous number of stories of wit and stupidity, in which he is frequently accompanied by his donkey. Who Juha was, and when he lived, is uncertain. Some accounts say he was a learned man of the time of Harun ar-Rashid (766 ? - 809); others place him variously in the 12th century, the 13th century, and the 15th century. One scholar says that Arabic droll stories about a certain Juha were current in large numbers at the end of the 10th century. Juha is also frequently identified with, or possibly confused with, Khodja, an Imam (Moslem religious leader) who lived, according to some accounts, in Anatolia during the 13th century, about whom similar stories are told. In any case, Juha's curious mixture of wit and stupidity have become proverbial among the Arabs.

The phrase ʔʔalaa' bittlaate *the threefold divorce* refers to a

prescription in the Shari'a (*Shari'a religious law of Islam*) concerning divorce. Under this law the husband, and not the wife, has the right to break, by repudiation, a validly contracted marriage. A man may divorce his wife merely by saying « You are divorced. » He may do this twice, and each time take her back without any ceremony. One utterance of this formula is called simple repudiation ; two utterances constitute double repudiation. But if the man says the formula a third time, or repudiates his wife with a triple formula in one sentence, this is known as repudiation through the triple formula, and the divorce is final.

UNIT 29 • A village.

PATTERN SENTENCES

1. An invitation

My family would like to meet you, Mr. West, before you return to America.

spend (time)
village

And I wanted to ask you if you could come with me and spend three or four days with them in the village.

up to now
be available
opportunity

Really, I'd like to very much, because up to now I haven't had a chance to get acquainted with the life of the fallahin in the villages.

'ahli bihibbu y'aabluuk, yaa mistir west, 'abil maa tirja9 la'ameerka.

'ada bi'di
'arye, pl. qura

wħabbeet 'as'alak, 'iza mumkin tiiji ma9i, ni'di tlat arba9 tiyyaam 9indhum fil'arye.

laħadd halla
šahh bišihh
furša
saddi'. baħibb ktiir. li'anno laħadd halla, maa šahhilli furša 'at9arraf fiha 9ala ħayaat lfallaahiin filqura.

2. In the village

go around, turn around

daar biduur

together
Now we'll go together and go
around for two or three hours,
and I'll show you the most im-
portant things here.

mosque
church

First of all I'd like to show you
the mosque, and then we'll go
see the church.

mixed
Christian
Moslem

Our town is mixed. About
half Christian and half Moslem.

wedding

Today the Christians are
having a wedding, and if
you'd like to we'll go watch it
for a couple of hours.

evening party

This evening we'll go to the
evening party if you'd like to.
What do they do at the
evening party?

dancing
dabke (a folk dance)
singing

sawa
halla binruuḥ sawa, wbinduril-
na saa9teen tlaate, bafarjiik
fiha 'ahamm maa fii hoon.

jaami9
kniise

'awwal šii, baḥibb 'afarjiik
9aljaami9, wba9deen binruuḥ
nšuuḥ likniise.

maxluuṭ
masiiḥi, pl. masiiḥiyye
mislim, pl.-iin

baladna maxluuṭa. ta'riiban
nnuṣṣ fiiha masiiḥiyye,
winnuṣṣ ttaani misilmiin.

9urs

lyoom fii 9urs 9ind lmasiiḥiyye.
w'iza biḥibb, binruuḥ nitfarraj
9alee saa9teen zamaan.

sahra
l9ašiyye binruuḥ 9assahra,
'iza biḥibb.
šuu bi9malu bissahra?

ra's
dabke
ġina

drinking

good time

There's dancing and dabke and
singing and drinking and a
good time.

3. The headman

vineyard, orchard

And what do you think of
going with me today to the
vineyards and fig orchards?

she is undertaking it

And while we're on the way
we'll look at the new agricul-
tural projects that the govern-
ment is undertaking.

mukhtar (headman)

Then we'll introduce you, after
we come back, to the mukhtar
of the town.

guest

Really, he's a fine man, and
he likes to be introduced to the
guests of the town.

dearer, dearest

šurub

baṣṭ

fii ra's, wdabke, wġina,
wšurb, wbaṣṭ.

karm, pl. kruum

wšuu ra'yak truḥ ma9i lyoom,
9akruum l9inab wittiin?

bit'uum fiiha

wniḥna raayḥiin fiṭṭarii',
bnitfarraj 9almašaarii9
zziraa9iyye jjiide, lli 9am-
bit'uum fiiha lhukuume.

muxtaar

ba9deen bin9arrfak, lamma
nirja9, 9amuxtaar lbalad.

ġeef, pl. dyuuf

saddi'ni, huwwe rijjaal ṭayyib.
wbiḥibb yit9arraf 9adyuuf
lbalad.

'aḥabb

And what he likes most of all
is to talk to them about the
town.

Wait till you go to his place.

be founded

He'll tell you the history of
the town from the day it was
founded up to today.

explain

politics

internal, domestic

He'll also explain to you the
internal politics of the town.

explain

products

sources of income

expenditures

He'll explain to you about the
products of the town, and its
sources of income, and its
expenditures, and whatever
you want.

always

Whenever I bring guests here
I always introduce them to
him.

w'aħabb maa 9alee, 'inno
yihkiilhum 9an lbalad.

stanna latruuh 9indo.
t'assas bit'assas
biħkiilak taariix lbalad, min
yoom maa t'assasat, laħadd
lyoom.

šarah bišrah
siyaase
daaxli

wbišrahlak kamaan siyaast
lbalad ddaaxliyye.

fahham bifahhim
mantuujaat
daxil
xarj

bifahhmak 9an mantuujaat
lbalad, wdaxilha, wxarjha,
wšuu maa biddak.

daayman
'ana lamma bajiib qyuuf,
daayman ba9arrifhum 9alee.

And he explains to them all
about the town.

Because I don't know very
much about it.

it happens that
outside
feast day
relative

It happens that I've spent most
of my time away from here
and I only come to the town
on feast days to visit my
family and relatives.

question

I have a lot of questions about
life in the villages.

compose, write
personal observation

I want to write a book about
what I've seen in the Near East
when I get back to America.

be printed
copy

And after it's printed I'll send
you a copy.

I'd be very grateful.

whuwwe bišrahilhum kullši
9an lbalad.

li'anno 'ana maa ba9raf ktiir
9anha.

ħaakim
barra
9iid, pl. 'a9yaad
'ariib, pl. 'araayib

ħaakim 'adeet 'aktar wa'ti
barra. wmaa baaji 9albalad
geer 9al'a9yaad, laħatta
'azuur l'ahil wil'araayib.

su'aal, pl. -aat, 'as'ile
fi 9indi 'as'ile ktiire 9an
lħayaa filqura.

'allaf bi'allif
mušaahade, pl. -aat
bididi 'a'allif ktaab 9an
mušaahadaati fiššarq l'adna,
lamma 'arja9 la'ameerka.

nṭaba9 bintṭbi9
nusxa

wba9id maa yintṭbi9, bab9atflak
nusxa.

bakuun mamnuun ktiir.

Additional vocabulary

1. Feast Days and Holidays

Birthday	9iid miilaad
Christmas	9iid lmiilaad
Easter	9iid lfiṣih
Independence	9iid listiqlaal
New Year's	9iid raas ssane
Birthday of the Prophet	9iid lmawlid
Breaking of the fast of Ramadan	9iid lfiṭir
Feast of the Sacrifice	9iid l'aḏḥa.

2. General Feast Day and Holiday Greetings

May you be safe and sound every year.	kull sane w'inte saalim.
And may you be safe and sound (in reply).	w'inte saalim.

3. Kinship terms

These are terms of reference and are listed from the point of view of Ego, i.e., my father, etc. The term without the ending -i is given in parentheses.

my father	'abuuy	('ab)
my mother	'immi	('imm)

my brother	'axuuy	('ax)
my sister	'uxti	('uxt)
my husband	zooji	(zooj)
	joozi	(jooz)
my wife	zoojti	(zooje)
	marli	(mara)
my son	'ibni	('ibin)
my daughter	binti	(bint)
my grandfather (either side)	siidi	(siid)
my grandmother (either side)	jiddi	(jidd)
	sitti	(sitt)
my stepfather	jooz 'immi	(jooz 'imm)
my stepmother	mart 'abuuy	(mart 'ab)
my father's brother	9ammi	(9amm)
my father's sister	9amnti	(9amme)
my mother's brother	xaali	(xaal)
my mother's sister	xaalti	(xaale)
my brother's son	'ibin 'axuuy	('ibin 'ax)
my brother's daughter	bint 'axuuy	(bint 'ax)
my sister's son	'ibin 'uxti	('ibin 'uxt)
my sister's daughter	bint 'uxti	(bint 'uxt)
my father's brother's son	'ibin 9ammi	('ibin 9amm)
my father's brother's daughter	bint 9ammi	(bint 9amm)
my father's sister's son	'ibin 9amnti	('ibin 9amme)

my father's sister's daughter	bint 9ammī (bint 9amme)
my mother's brother's son	'ibin xaali ('ibin xaal)
my mother's brother's daughter	bint xaali (bint xaal)
my mother's sister's son	'ibin xaalti ('ibin xaale)
my mother's sister's daughter	bint xaalti (bint xaale)

Kinship terms

Terms like jiddi *my grandfather* and 'ibin 9ammi *my father's brother* that designate a relative are known as *kinship terms*. The Arabic kinship system is not very different from our own and employs terms similar to ours.

There are some uses of Arabic kinship terms that are different from Western usage. For instance, it is customary for parents to be called by the name of their first-born son: 'abu 'akram *the father of Akram*; 'imm 'akram *the mother of Akram*. This is a common term of address and reference and is used by persons both inside and outside the kinship group.

UNIT 30 • Going home.

PATTERN SENTENCES

pack	ḡabb biḡubb
Have you packed everything,	ḡabbeet kullṣi yaa mistir west,
Mr. West, or do you need	willa biddak m(u)saa9ade ?
some help ?	
packed	maḡbuub
rest	raaḡa
Thank you, everything's	ṣukran. kullṣi maḡbuub. maa
packed. I only want you	biddi 'illa raaḡtak.
to rest.	
make (something) come	nazzal binazzil
down	
under	taḡt
All right, then. I'll come help	ṭayyib, 'izan. baaji 'asaa9dak
you take the suitcases	nnazzil ṣṣantaat lataḡt.
downstairs.	
see (someone) off	wadda9 biwaddi9
And then we'll go see you off	wba9deen, binruuḡ nwadd9ak
at the harbor.	9almiina.
But don't forget us, Mr. West,	bass laa tinsaana yaa mistir
while you're in America.	west, w'inte fii 'ameerka.
line	ṣaṭir, pl. 'aṣṭur

Write us two or three lines
when you arrive.

keep (someone) informed
And always keep us informed
about yourself.

It's inconceivable that I should
forget you, Ahmad, after all
the kindness you've shown me.

forgiveness, pardon
embarrass
gratitude

Don't mention it, Mr. West.
You embarrass me. What have I
done for you that I should
deserve all this gratitude?

kindness, favor

I won't forget your kindness
all my life.

If you or any of your relatives
come to America, you must
come to visit me at my home.
My house is your house (an
expression extending

hospitality).

be safe
owner

ktubilna satreen tlaate, lamma
tuusal.

tamman bi'tammin
wdaayman tamminna 9an
haqirtak.
mis ma9'uul 'ansaakum, yaa
'ahmad, ba9id kull lma9ruuf lli
9miltuu ma9i.

9afu
xajjal bixajjil
mamnuuniyye
l9afu, yaa mistir west. xajjaltna.
suu 9milnaalak, lahatta nisthi"
kull halmamnuuniyye?

faqil, pl. 'afdaal
faqilkum, maa bansaa tuul
hayaati.
bihyaatak, 'iza 'ijit 'inte,
'aw had min 'araaybak
9a'ameerka, laazim tiiju
zzuuruuni filbeet.
lbeet beetkum.

silim bislam
saahib, pl. ('a)shaab

May the house and its owners
be safe (in reply).

I hope to send my oldest boy
to America to be educated,
and he will come to visit you.

gift, present

Before I forget, Mr. West. I
have a small gift I want you
to take to your family.

Why bother, Ahmad?

duty

It's no bother. It's a duty.

I beg forgiveness of God
(a reply to a compliment)

overwhelm
kindness

Not at all. You've overwhelmed
me with your kindness.

make (someone) arrive

I think I have to go back now.

Good luck, and may God be
with you and bring you back
safely to your family.

May God keep you.

yislam lbeet w'ashaabo.

n'saa'lla rah'ab9at 'ibni likbiir
9a'ameerka, hatta yit9allam.
whuwwe bijji yzuurkum.

hadiyye, pl. hadaaya
abil maa 'ansa, yaa mistir west,
fii ma9i hadiyye zgiire, biddi
taaxudha lal9eele.

lees halgalabe, yaa 'ahmad?
wajib

maa fii galabe. haada wajib.
'astagfiru llaa, stagfaralla

gamar bugmur
lutuf

'astagfiru llaa. gamartuuna
blutufkum.

was'al biwas'il
baftkir laazim 'arja9 halla.
mwaffa', n'saa'lla. w'alla ykuun
ma9ak, wiywas'slak 9ind 'ahlak
bissalaame.
'alla ysallmak.

This Vocabulary is arranged alphabetically, according to the transcription used in the text. The ordinary letters and special symbols appear in the following order : ' a b ḅ ḍ e f g ġ h ḥ i j k l ḷ m n o p q r ṛ s š ṣ̌ t ṭ u v w x y z ẓ 9.

Verbs are entered in the third person masculine singular (the « he » form) of the suffix tense, followed by the third person masculine singular of the prefix tense. They are translated by the English infinitive without « to ».

Nouns are entered in the singular, followed by the plural, if any. Plurals are not entered separately, except for the relatively few plurals that lack a singular. Singular nouns ending in -a or -e are feminine, unless otherwise marked ; all other singular nouns are masculine.

Adjectives are entered in the masculine singular, followed by the feminine singular, and the plural, if any.

The abbreviations are the same as those used elsewhere in the book.

,

'a'rab	<i>nearer, nearest</i>
'aab	<i>August</i>
'aabal bi'aabil	<i>meet</i>
'aaḍaar	<i>March</i>
'aaḍi 'uḍa(a) or quḍaat	<i>judge</i>
'aal bi'uul	<i>tell, say</i>
'aam bi'iim	<i>remove</i>

'aam bi'uum	<i>get up</i>
'aam fii	<i>undertake</i>
'aas bi'iis	<i>measure</i>
'aaşaş bi'aaşış	<i>punish</i>
'aaşış 'aaşşa 'aaşşiin	<i>cutting</i>
'ab 'abbayaat or 'aabaa'	<i>father</i>
'abadan	<i>(not) at all</i>
'abil	<i>before, ago</i>
'abil maa (+ verb)	<i>before</i>
'abir 'buur	<i>grave, tomb</i>
'abyađ beeđa biid	<i>white</i>
'ab9ad	<i>farther, farthest</i>
'adaar bidiir	<i>direct</i>
'adab 'aadaab	<i>literature</i>
'add	<i>as much as</i>
'add maa (+ verb)	<i>as much as, as many as,</i>
	<i>whatever</i>
'addaaha 'addaahaat	<i>lighter</i>
'addam bi'addim	<i>advance, present</i>
'addees	<i>how much, how long</i>
'adna	<i>nearer, nearest</i>
'ađa bi'đi	<i>spend (time)</i>
'ađha (m)	<i>sacrifice</i>
'afaad bifid	<i>be useful</i>
'afandi	<i>effendi (a term of address)</i>
'afandi	<i>tangerines</i>
'ağla	<i>more expensive, most expensive</i>
'ahamm bihim	<i>concern</i>

268 (Vocab. I)

'ahamm	<i>more important, most important</i>
'ahil (pl)	<i>family</i>
'ahla wsahla	<i>welcome !</i>
'ahlan wasahlan	<i>welcome !</i>
'ahwe	<i>coffee</i>
'ahwe 'ahaawi	<i>coffee shop</i>
'ahabb	<i>dearer, dearest</i>
'ahla	<i>nicer, nicest</i>
'ahmar hamra humur	<i>red</i>
'ahsan	<i>better, best</i>
'aja biiji	<i>come</i>
'ajadd	<i>newer, newest</i>
'ajra bijri	<i>carry out</i>
'akal byaakul	<i>eat</i>
'akbar kubra	<i>bigger, biggest; older, oldest</i>
'akil	<i>food</i>
'aktar	<i>more, most</i>
'ala bi'li	<i>fry</i>
'alam 'laam	<i>pencil, pen</i>
'alam hibir	<i>fountain pen</i>
'alf 'aalaaf/taalaaf or 'uluuf	<i>thousand</i>
'alfeen	<i>two thousand</i>
tlat taalaaf	<i>three thousand</i>
'alhag bilhiq	<i>annex</i>
'aliil 'aliile 'aliliin or 'laal	<i>small, slight</i>
'allaf bi'allif	<i>compose, write</i>
'alla	<i>God</i>
'alla ysallmak	<i>may God keep you (m)</i>
	<i>(in reply to ma9 ssalaame)</i>

(Vocab. I) 269

nuškur 'alla	<i>let us thank God</i>
'almaani 'almaaniyye 'almaan	<i>German</i>
'amal 'aamaal	<i>hope</i>
'amar bu'mur	<i>order, command</i>
'ameerka	<i>America</i>
'ameerkaani 'ameerkaaniyye	<i>American</i>
'ameerkaan	
'amiiş 'umşaan	<i>shirt</i>
'amir 'awaamir	<i>command</i>
'amrak	<i>yes, indeed (lit. your command)</i>
'amir 'umuur	<i>matter, affair</i>
'amkan bimkin	<i>be possible</i>
'ana	<i>I</i>
'anbaa' (pl)	<i>news</i>
'anniine 'anaani	<i>bottle</i>
'an9am bin9im	<i>favor</i>
'alla yin9im 9aleek	<i>may God favor you (in reply to na9iiman)</i>
	<i>revive</i>
'an9aš bin9iš	<i>farther, farthest</i>
'aqşa	<i>four</i>
'arba9a/'arba9	<i>four years</i>
'arba9 sniin	<i>fourteen</i>
'arba9 9a9š/'arba9 9a9šar	<i>fourteen years</i>
'arba9 9a9šar sane	<i>forty</i>
'arb9iin	<i>floor</i>
'arđ (f)	<i>ground, land</i>
'arđ (f) 'araađi	<i>artichokes</i>
'arđi šooki	

'ariib 'ariibe 'raab	<i>close, near</i>
'ariib min	<i>close to</i>
'ariib 'araayib	<i>relative</i>
'arnabiiŧ	<i>cauliflower</i>
'arye qura	<i>village</i>
'asaas 'asaasaat	<i>foundation</i>
'aswad sooda suud	<i>black</i>
'aşaş 'aşaşaat	<i>punishment</i>
'aşarr bişirr	<i>insist</i>
'aşfar şafra şufur	<i>yellow</i>
'aşir 'şuur	<i>palace</i>
'aşş bi'uşş	<i>cut</i>
'aşşar bi'aşşir	<i>point out</i>
'atiina	<i>Athens</i>
'a9a9 bi'9a9	<i>cut</i>
'a99a9 bi'a99i9	<i>cut to pieces</i>
'a9yab	<i>tastier, tastiest</i>
'aw	<i>or</i>
'awşat wušta	<i>middle, central</i>
'awwal 'uula 'awaa'il	<i>first</i>
'awwal šii	<i>first of all</i>
'ax 'ixwe	<i>brother</i>
'axi	<i>my brother (an informal term of address)</i>
'axuuy	<i>my brother</i>
'axad byaaxud	<i>take</i>

'axaff	<i>lighter, lightest</i>	'ibtidaa'	<i>beginning</i>
'axɖar xɑɖra xuɖur	<i>green</i>	'ideen	<i>two hands</i>
'axxar bi'axxir	<i>delay</i>	'idir bi'dar	<i>be able</i>
'ayluul	<i>September</i>	'ihtimaam	<i>concern</i>
'aywa	<i>yes</i>	'ihmiraar	<i>redness</i>
'ayy	<i>what, which, any</i>	'iid 'ayaadi	<i>hand</i>
'ayyaar	<i>May</i>	'ideen	<i>two hands</i>
'ayyad bi'ayyid	<i>support</i>	'iitaalya	<i>Italy</i>
'azaa9 bizii9	<i>broadcast</i>	'ijbaari 'ijbaariyye	<i>compulsory</i>
'azra' zar'a zuru'	<i>blue</i>	'ijbaariyyiin	
'az9aj biz9ij	<i>disturb</i>	'ijtimaa9 'ijtimaa9aat	<i>meeting, society</i>
'azgar	<i>younger, youngest; smaller,</i>	'illa	<i>except, minus</i>
	<i>smallest</i>	'illi	<i>that, which, who, the one</i>
'a9ad bu'9ud	<i>sit</i>	'imm (f) 'immayaat	<i>mother</i>
'a9jab bi9jib	<i>please</i>	'infijaar	<i>exploding</i>
'a9la 9ulya	<i>higher, highest</i>	'influwenza	<i>influenza</i>
'a9lan bi9lin	<i>proclaim</i>	'ingiltra	<i>England</i>
'a9ta bya9ti	<i>give</i>	'ingliizi 'ingliiziyye 'ingliiz	<i>English</i>
'a9zab 9izbaan	<i>bachelor</i>	'inno	<i>that, that he</i>
'baal	<i>across from</i>	'inšaa'	<i>constructing</i>
'eemta(n)	<i>when</i>	'inte	<i>you (m)</i>
'eemta maa (+ verb)	<i>whenever</i>	'inti	<i>you (f)</i>
'ees	<i>what</i>	'intixaab	<i>electing</i>
'ees maa (+ verb)	<i>whatever</i>	'intixaabaat	<i>elections</i>
'ibin wlaad	<i>son</i>	'intu	<i>you (pl)</i>
'ibin 9arab	<i>Arab (m)</i>		
'ibre 'ubar	<i>needle</i>		

'in9aaš
'iqtīšaād
'iqtīšaādi 'iqtīšaādiyye
'iqtīšaādiyyiin
'iri bi'ra
'irš 'ruuš
'isim 'asmaa'
'istiqlaal
'ixbaari 'ixbaariyye
'ixbaariyyiin
'ixwaan
'iza
'izaa9a 'izaa9aat
'izan
'izin 'zuune or 'uzuunaat
'iz9aaaj 'iz9aaajaat
'maas
'raay(e)
'reedis
'uddaam
'unšliyye 'unšliyyaat
'unšul 'anaašil
'urduni 'urduniyye,
'urduniyyiin or 'urduniyye
'usbuu9 'asabii9

reviving
economics
economic

read
piastre
name
independence
news (adj.)

brethren
if
broadcasting ; radio station
then
leave, permission
inconvenience
cloth
reading
shrimp
in front of
consulate
consul
Jordanian

week

'ustaaz 'asaatze

'uteel 'uteelaat
'uṭun
'uuḍa 'uwaḍ
'uxt (f) xawaat
'yaas 'yaasaat

teacher, maestro
professional man
hotel
cotton
room
sister
measurement

B

b- / bi-
bhaliblaad
bil9arabi
ba'ar
ba'ara ba'araat
ba'duunis
ba'laawe
baa'i baa'ye baa'yiin
baab bwaab
baaboor bawabiir
baal
baamye
baarak bibaarik

in
in this country
in Arabic
cows
a cow
parsley
baklava
remaining
door
boat
attention
okra
bless

'alla ybaarik fiik	<i>may God bless you</i>	barlamaan barlamaanaat	<i>parliament</i>
	<i>(in reply to mabruuk)</i>	barnaamaj baraamij	<i>program</i>
baaṭaḥ bibaaṭiḥ	<i>wrestle</i>	barra	<i>outside</i>
baaxira bawaaxir	<i>steamship</i>	bass	<i>but</i>
baayi9 baay9a baay9iin	<i>selling</i>	baṣal	<i>onions</i>
baa9 bibii9	<i>sell</i>	baṣiiṭ baṣiiṭa baṣiiṭiin	<i>simple</i>
bada bibda	<i>begin</i>	baṣṭ	<i>good time</i>
badle badlaat	<i>suit</i>	batt bibitt	<i>decide</i>
baḡdaad (f)	<i>Baghdad</i>	baṭaaṭa	<i>potatoes</i>
baḥri baḥriyye baḥriyyiin	<i>naval</i>	baṭaḥ bibṭaḥ	<i>throw down</i>
bakkiir	<i>early</i>	baṭin bṭuun	<i>belly</i>
bala	<i>without</i>	baṭṭ	<i>ducks</i>
balaas	<i>no need</i>	baṭṭa baṭṭaat	<i>a duck</i>
balad (f) blaad	<i>town</i>	baṭṭaal baṭṭaale baṭṭaaliin	<i>bad</i>
baladi baladiyye	<i>municipal</i>	baṭṭiix	<i>watermelons</i>
baladiyye baladiyyaat	<i>municipality</i>	baṭṭiixa baṭṭiixaat	<i>a watermelon</i>
bala9 bibla9	<i>swallow</i>	bazeella	<i>peas</i>
bana bibni	<i>build</i>	ba9at bib9at	<i>send</i>
bandoora	<i>tomatoes</i>	ba9d	<i>up to now</i>
bank bnuuk	<i>bank</i>	ba9deen	<i>later on</i>
banna (m) bannayiin	<i>mason</i>	ba9id / ba9d	<i>after</i>
bard	<i>coldness</i>	ba9d ḡduhur	<i>afternoon</i>
barhan bibarhin	<i>prove</i>	ba9id maa (+ verb)	<i>after</i>
bariid	<i>mail</i>	beed	<i>eggs</i>
bariid jawwi	<i>airmail</i>	beeda beedaat	<i>an egg</i>

been	<i>between</i>
beeruut (f)	<i>Beirut</i>
beet hyuut	<i>house</i>
beet mayy	<i>toilet</i>
beetinjaan	<i>eggplants</i>
beetinjaane beetinja(a)naat	<i>an eggplant</i>
beet laħim (f)	<i>Bethlehem</i>
bi'i bib'a	<i>stay, remain</i>
bid- / bidd-	<i>want</i>
bidkum	<i>you (pl) want</i>
bidna	<i>we want</i>
biddak	<i>you (m) want</i>
bihyaatak	<i>please (lit. by your life)</i>
biira	<i>beer</i>
binni binniyye binniyyiin	<i>brown</i>
bint (f) banaat	<i>daughter, girl</i>
bint 9arab	<i>Arab (f)</i>
blaad (f)	<i>country ; countries</i>
blaad lingliiz	<i>England</i>
bluuze bluuzaat	<i>blouse</i>
booṣṭa booṣṭaat	<i>post office</i>

278 (Vocab. I)

D

d'ii'a da'aayi'	<i>minute</i>
da'in d'uun	<i>beard</i>
daa'ira dawaa'ir	<i>department</i>
daan dineen	<i>ear</i>
daar bidiir	<i>turn</i>
diir baalak	<i>take care</i>
daar biduur	<i>go around, turn around</i>
daarij daarje daarjiin	<i>current</i>
daawa bidaawi	<i>treat medically</i>
daaxli daaxliyye daaxliyyiin	<i>internal, domestic</i>
daayman	<i>always</i>
daayme	<i>always (expression said after drinking coffee and returning the cup)</i>
dabbar bidabbir	<i>arrange</i>
dabbuus dababiis	<i>pin</i>
ḍabke dabkaat	<i>dabke (a folk dance)</i>
daftar dafaatir	<i>notebook</i>
dall bidill	<i>direct</i>
danab dnaab	<i>tail</i>

(Vocab. I) 279

daras budrus
dawa (m) 'adwiye
dawle duwal
dawwar bidawwir
daxil
diik dyuuk
diik ḥabaš
diinaar dananiir
diini diiniyye diiniyyiin
dinya
djawwaz bidjawwaz
draa9 'adru9/tudru9
tlat tudru9
duḡri
duktoor dakaatra
durraa'

study
medicine
state, nation
have (someone) go around
sources of income
rooster
turkey
dinar
religious
world
be married
drā' (an arm's length)
three drā's
straight ahead
doctor
peaches

dariibe qaraa'ib
qaruura qaruurat
qaruuri qaruriyye
qaruuriyyiin
qḏahraan (f)
qeef qyuuf
qiḥik biḥḥak
quhur

tax
necessity
necessary

Dhahran
guest
laugh
noon

F

fa'iir fa'iire fu'ara
faa' bifii'
faadi
faaḍ bifiiḍ
faaḍi faaḍye faaḍyiin
faat bifuut
faatih faathā faathiiin
faḍḍal bifaḍḍil
faḍil 'afḍaal
fahham bifahhim
fallaah fallaahiiin
falsafe falsafaat

poor
wake up
savior
overflow
free, empty
pass by
open
prefer
favor, kindness
explain
fallah, peasant
philosophy

fara' bifri'
 farja bifarji
 farše faršaat
 faşşal bifaşşil
 faşuulya
 fatah biftah
 fawaakih
 fayya' bifayyi'
 feen
 feen maa (+verb)
 fiqi bifqā
 fihim bifham
 fii
 fii / fii- / fi-
 fijil
 fikra fikar
 filfil
 finjaan fanajiin
 fişih
 fiţir
 foo'
 fraansa
 fransaawi fransaawiyye
 fransaawiyiin
 freez

make a difference
show
bed
cut out a garment
dried beans
open
fruit
wake
where
wherever
be free, be vacant
understand
there is, there are
in
radishes
idea
pepper
cup
Easter
breaking fast
above
France
French

strawberries

ftakar biflkir
 fţuur
 furşā furāş
 fuşha
 fuştaan faşaţiin
 fuul
 fuuţa fuwaţ

think
breakfast
vacation, opportunity
pure
dress
Spanish beans
napkin

G

gravaat (f) gravattaat
 gumruk gamaarik

necktie
customs

Ġ

ġaab biġiib
 ġaali ġaalye ġaalyiin
 ġaaye ġaayaat
 ġaazal biġaazil
 ġada (m)

be absent
expensive
object, intention
flirt
midday meal

ġalab biġlib
 ġalabe ġalabaat
 ġalaṭ (invariable adj.)
 ġallab biġallib
 ġamar buġmur
 ġani ġaniyye 'aġniya
 ġaraḍ 'aġraaḍ
 ġasiil
 ġassal biġassil
 ġazal biġzil
 ġeebe ġeebaat
 ġeeme ġeemaat or ġyuum
 ġeer
 ġili biġla
 ġina (m)
 ġurfe ġuraf

overcome
trouble, bother
wrong
bother
overwhelm
rich
purpose
laundry, wash
wash
spin
absence
cloud
other than, different
be expensive
singing
room

H

ha-
 haada
 haadi
 habb bihibb

this (m, f), these
this (m)
this (f)
blow

hadam bihdim
 hadd bihidd
 hadiyye hadaaya
 hadool
 haḍam bihḍim
 halla
 haloo
 handase handasaat
 hanii'an

hanna bihanni
 'alla yhanniik

hawiyye hawiyyaat
 hayy
 hazz bihizz
 hazz
 heek
 hiyye
 hoon
 htamm bihtamm
 humme
 hunaak
 huwwe

destroy
demolish
gift, present
these
digest
now
hello (on telephone)
engineering
may it do you good (said to
someone who has just drunk
some water)
give joy
may God give you joy (in
reply to hanii'an)
identity card
here is, here are
move, shake
a moving, a shaking
thus, so
she
here
be concerned
they
there
he

H

ha"	<i>price</i>
ha" h'uu'	<i>right</i>
ha'ii'a ha'aayi'	<i>truth</i>
haadir haadra haadriin	<i>ready, present</i>
haafaz bihaafiz	<i>maintain</i>
haafiz hawaafiz	<i>stimulus</i>
haafiz haafza haafziin	<i>keeper</i>
haaka bihaaki	<i>talk to</i>
haakim	<i>it happens that</i>
haal 'ah'waal	<i>condition</i>
haal	<i>self</i>
haale haalaat	<i>situation</i>
haamiq haamda haamdiin	<i>sour</i>
haasab bihaasib	<i>reckon</i>
haatit haatfa haatfiin	<i>putting</i>
habb bihibb	<i>like, love</i>
habbe habbaat	<i>grain, seed, berry</i>
habbit bandoora	<i>a tomato</i>
habbit zeetuun	<i>an olive</i>
habbit 9inab	<i>a grape</i>

habbe hbuub	<i>pill</i>
habiib habiibe habaayib	<i>loved one</i>
had(a)	<i>anyone</i>
hadd hduud	<i>boundary</i>
hadiid	<i>iron</i>
haqdar bihaqdir	<i>prepare</i>
hadra hadraat	<i>presence</i>
hadirtak	<i>your presence (a term of address)</i>
hafaz bihfaz	<i>keep</i>
'alla yihfazak	<i>may God keep you</i>
hafle haflaat	<i>party</i>
haka bihki	<i>speak</i>
hala' bihli'	<i>shave</i>
halab (f)	<i>Aleppo</i>
haliib	<i>milk</i>
hallaa' hallaa'iin	<i>barber</i>
hammaam hammaamaat	<i>bath, bathroom</i>
haraara	<i>fever</i>
harake harakaat	<i>movement</i>
haram	<i>sanctuary</i>
hariir	<i>silk</i>
harram biharrim	<i>forbid</i>
harrar biharrir	<i>edit</i>
hasa bihsi	<i>stuff</i>

hatta	<i>in order to</i>
hatt biḥutt	<i>put</i>
hawaali	<i>about</i>
hawwal bihawwil	<i>transfer</i>
hayaa(h) (f)	<i>life</i>
hayy hayye 'ahyaa'	<i>alive</i>
hazz biḥizz	<i>sever</i>
hazz ḥzuuz	<i>luck</i>
hda9s / ḥda9sar	<i>eleven</i>
ḥda9sar sane	<i>eleven years</i>
heet ḥiiṭaan	<i>wall</i>
hibir	<i>ink</i>
hilu ḥilwe ḥilwiin	<i>sweet, nice</i>
hmaar ḥamiir	<i>donkey</i>
hmarr biḥmarr	<i>become red</i>
hsaab	<i>bill, account</i>
htaaj biḥtaaj	<i>need</i>
hubb	<i>love</i>
hukuume ḥukuumaat	<i>government</i>
hummus	<i>chickpeas</i>
huquuq	<i>law</i>
hurr ḥurra 'ahraar	<i>free</i>
hzeeraan	<i>June</i>

J

jaab bijiib	<i>bring</i>
jaadal bijaadil	<i>dispute</i>
jaaj	<i>chickens</i>
jaaaje jaajaat	<i>a chicken</i>
jaamal bijaamil	<i>be courteous to</i>
jaami9 jawaami9	<i>mosque</i>
jaam(i)9a jaam(i)9aat	<i>university</i>
jaari jaarye jaaryiin	<i>flowing</i>
jaar jiiraan	<i>neighbor</i>
jaawab bijaawib	<i>answer</i>
jaay jaaye jaayiin	<i>coming, having come</i>
jaddad bijaddid	<i>renew</i>
jakeet jake(e)taat	<i>jacket</i>
jamal jmaal	<i>camel</i>
jama9 bijma9	<i>add</i>
jamb	<i>next to</i>
jamboon	<i>ham</i>
jamma9 bijammi9	<i>collect</i>
janb	<i>next to</i>
janb jawaanib	<i>side</i>

jariide jaraayid	<i>newspaper</i>
jarrah bijarrib	<i>try</i>
jawaab jawaabaat or 'ajwibe	<i>answer</i>
jawwi jawwiyye jawwiyyiin	<i>air (adj.)</i>
jazar	<i>carrots</i>
jdiid jdiide jdaad	<i>new</i>
jeeb ज्याab	<i>pocket</i>
jeeš jyuuš	<i>army</i>
jibne	<i>cheese</i>
jidd jduud	<i>grandfather</i>
jiddan	<i>very</i>
jins jnaas	<i>kind, sort</i>
jinsiyye jinsiyyaat	<i>nationality</i>
jooz jwaaz	<i>husband</i>
jooz 'imm	<i>stepfather</i>
jtama9 bijtmi9	<i>meet</i>
jum9a juma9	<i>week</i>

K

kaaf	<i>the Arabic letter kāf</i>
kaafah bikaafih	<i>combat</i>
kaan bikuun	<i>be</i>

kaanuun (l)'awwal
kaanuun (t)taani
kaas kaasaat
kaatab bikaatib
kaatib kaatbe kaatbiin
kaatib kuttaab
kabbar bikabbir
kaffa bikaffi
kahraba
kakaaw (f)
kalaam
kalsaat (pl)
kalsoon kalsoonaat
kam
kamaan
kannas bikannis
karaz
kariim kariime kurama
karm kruum
katab buktub
kawa bikwi
kawi
kawwa (m) kawwayiin
kazzaab kazzaabiin
kbiir kbiire kbaar

<i>December</i>
<i>January</i>
<i>glass</i>
<i>correspond</i>
<i>writing</i>
<i>writer, clerk</i>
<i>enlarge</i>
<i>be enough</i>
<i>electricity</i>
<i>hot chocolate</i>
<i>talk</i>
<i>socks</i>
<i>undershorts</i>
<i>how many ; some, a few</i>
<i>also, too</i>
<i>sweep</i>
<i>cherries</i>
<i>generous</i>
<i>vineyard, orchard</i>
<i>write</i>
<i>iron</i>
<i>ironing, pressing</i>
<i>presser</i>
<i>liar</i>
<i>big ; old</i>

keef
kibde
kibriite kibriitaat
kiif
 kiif haalak ?
 kiif maa (+verb)
kiilo kilowaat
kilme kilmaat
 kilme wahde
kitaabi kitaabiyye
kittaa
kniise kanaayis
koola
ktaab kutub
ktaabe ktaabaat
ktiir ktiire ktaar
kubra
kull
 kull maa (+verb)
kulliyye kulliyyaat
kundara kanaadir
kursi karaasi
kuştbaan kaşaatiin
kuusa (m)
kwayyis kwayyse kwayysiin

wish
liver
box of matches
how
how are you ?
however
kilo
word
bottom price
pertaining to writing
linen
church
cola
books
writing
much, a lot ; too much
major
all, every
whenever
college
pair of shoes
chair
thimble
squash
good, fine

L

l'aḥad *Sunday*
l'arba9a *Wednesday*
l'uds (f) *Jerusalem*
l'urdun *Jordan*
la' *no*
laa *no, not*
laa'a bilaa'i *find, meet*
laakin *but*
laazim laazme laazmiin *necessary*
lahje lahjaat *dialect*
laḥatta *so that*
laḥim *meat*
 laḥim ba'ar *beef*
 laḥim xanziir *pork*
 laḥim xaruuf *lamb*
 laḥim 9ijil *veal*
laḥme *meat*
lamma(n) *when*
lamma9 bilammi9 *polish*
laṭiif laṭiife laṭiifiin or luṭafa *pleasant*

law
leel
leele layaali
leele sa9iide
lleele
leemuun (haamiḍ)
leeṣ
lḥamdilla
li'anno
libis bilbas
lift
liḥye liḥa or liḥyaat
liira liiraat
liista liistaat
lissa
lizim bilzam
ljum9a
lla
lli
loon 'alwaan
lqaahira
lqur'aan
lubnaan
lubnaani lubnaaniyye
lubnaaniyyiin

if (contrary to fact)
nighttime
night
good night
tonight
lemons
why ; because
praise be to God
because
put on
turnips
beard
pound (currency)
menu
up to now
be necessary
Friday
except, minus
that, which, who ; the one
color
Cairo
the Koran
Lebanon
Lebanese

luḡa luḡaat
lluḡa ddaarje
lluḡa lfuṣṣa

lluḡa l9aammiyye
luṭuf 'altāaf
luubya
lxamiis
l9iraaq

language
the colloquial language
the pure language (i. e. Classical Arabic)
the colloquial language
kindness
beans
Thursday
Iraq

M

m'addam m'addame
m'addamiin
m'aṣṣ m'aṣṣaat
ma'bara ma'aabir
ma'kuulaat (pl)
ma'li ma'liyye ma'liyyiin
ma'ṣuuṣ ma'ṣuuṣa ma'ṣuuṣiin
maa
maa
maa

presented

scissors
cemetery
things to eat
fried
cut
not
(see Grammar of Unit 22)
that which

maa	<i>how !</i>
maa 'aḥlaaha	<i>how nice she is !</i>
maa 'akbaro	<i>how big it is !</i>
maaḍi maaḍye	<i>past ; last</i>
maali maaliyye	<i>financial</i>
maasi maaṣye maaṣyiin	<i>walking</i>
maasi lhaal	<i>so-so</i>
maaza	<i>hors d'œuvres (with drinks)</i>
mabruuk mabruuke	
mabruukiin	<i>blessed</i>
mabṣuuṭ mabṣuuṭa	<i>well</i>
mabṣuuṭiin	
mabyuu9 mabyuu9a	<i>sold</i>
mabyuu9iin	
madrise madaaris	<i>school</i>
maḍbuub maḍbuube	<i>packed</i>
maḍbuubiin	
mafra' mafaari'	<i>cross roads</i>
maftuuḥ maftuuḥa	<i>opened</i>
maftuuḥiin	
maḡluuṭ maḡluuṭa	<i>wrong</i>
maḡluuṭiin	
mahil	<i>slowness</i>
maḥall maḥallaat	<i>place</i>

maḥalli maḥalliyye	<i>local</i>
maḥalliyyiin	
maḥbuub maḥbuube	<i>loved</i>
maḥbuubiin	
maḥkame maḥaakim	<i>court</i>
maḥrame maḥaarim	<i>handkerchief</i>
maḥsi maḥsiyye maḥsiyyiin	<i>stuffed</i>
maḥsi maḥaasi	<i>stuffed vegetable</i>
maḥṭuuṭ maḥṭuuṭa	<i>placed</i>
maḥṭuuṭiin	
majalle majallaat	<i>magazine</i>
majmuu9 majmuu9aat	<i>total</i>
makaan 'amkine	<i>place</i>
maktab makaatib	<i>office</i>
maktabe maktabaat	<i>bookstore, library</i>
maktuub makatiib	<i>letter</i>
makwi makwiyye makwiyyiin	<i>ironed</i>
malfuuf	<i>cabbage</i>
malfuufe malfuufaat	<i>a cabbage</i>
malyaan malyaane malyaaniin	<i>full</i>
malyoon malayiin	<i>million</i>
mamnuun mamnuune	<i>thankful, grateful</i>
mamnuuniin	
mamnuunak	<i>thank you</i>
mamuuuniyye	<i>gratitude</i>

mamša (m) mamaši	<i>corridor</i>
mansuub mansuube	<i>attributed to</i>
mansuubiin	
manšuub manšuube	<i>suspended</i>
manšuubiin	
mantuujaat (pl)	<i>products</i>
maqaale maqaalaat	<i>article</i>
mara niswaan	<i>wife, woman</i>
mart 'ab	<i>stepmother</i>
mara' bumru'	<i>pass</i>
marad 'amraad	<i>disease</i>
arduud arduude	<i>rejected</i>
arduudiin	
marðuud marðuuda	<i>bruised</i>
marðuudiin	
marhaba	<i>hello</i>
marhabteen	<i>hello (in reply)</i>
mariid mariida marða	<i>sick</i>
marja9 maraaji9	<i>authority, reference</i>
marra marraat	<i>time</i>
mas'ale masaa'il	<i>problem</i>
mas'uul mas'uule mas'uuliin	<i>responsible</i>
masa	<i>evening</i>
masa lxeer	<i>good evening</i>

298 (Vocab. I)

masa nnuur	<i>good evening (in reply)</i>
masaa'i masaa'iyye	<i>evening (adj.)</i>
masah bimsah	<i>wipe off</i>
masiihi masiihiyye	<i>Christian</i>
masiihiyyiin or masiihiyye	
maskiin maskiine masakiin	<i>poor, unfortunate</i>
masluu' masluu'a masluu'iin	<i>boiled</i>
masmuu9 masmuu9a	<i>heard</i>
masmuu9iin	
masruur masruura	<i>delighted</i>
masruuriin	
mašaari	<i>money</i>
mašir (f)	<i>Egypt</i>
maslaħa mašaaliħ	<i>interest</i>
maša bimši	<i>walk</i>
mašgal mašaagil	<i>workshop</i>
mašguul mašguule	<i>busy</i>
mašguuliin	
mašhuur mašhuura	<i>famous</i>
mašhuuriin	
mašruub mašruubaat	<i>alcoholic beverage</i>
mašruu9 mašaarii9	<i>project</i>
maššať bimaššiť	<i>comb</i>
mašta (m) mašaati	<i>winter resort</i>
mašwi mašwiyye mašwiyyiin	<i>broiled</i>

(Vocab. I) 299

matalan
 mathaf mataahif
 maṭaar maṭaaraat
 maṭbax maṭaabix
 maṭ9am maṭaa9im
 maw'if mawaa'if
 mawjuud mawjuude
 mawjuudiin
 mawlid
 mawsim mawaasim
 maw9id mawaa9iid
 maxluuṭ maxluuṭa
 maxluuṭiin
 mazaar mazaaraat
 mazbuuṭ mazbuuṭa
 mazbuuṭiin
 ma9
 ma9 ssalaame
 ma9ak
 ma9'uul ma9'uule
 ma9'uuliin
 ma9aaš ma9aašaāt
 ma9aleeš
 ma9la'a ma9aali'
 ma9luum
 ma9luumaat (pl)
 ma9mal ma9aamil
 ma9rife

for example
museum
airport
kitchen
restaurant
stopping place
present

birth
season
appointment
mixed

shrine
correct

with
good-bye
you have
reasonable

wages, salary
it doesn't matter
spoon
of course, certainly
information
factory, plant
knowing

ma9ruuf
 mbaarak mbaarake
 mbaarakiin
 mbaarih
 mhandis mhandisiin
 mḥaami muḥaamiin
 mḥaasib mḥaasbiin
 mḥaḍḍar mḥaḍḍara
 mḥaḍḍariin
 mḥammar mḥammara
 mḥammariin
 mḥarrir mḥarririin
 mḥaasabaat (pl)
 mḥaasabe
 mḥaṭṭa mḥaṭṭaat
 miftkir miftikre miftikriin
 mijjawwiz mijjawwze
 mijjawwziin
 miilaad
 miin
 miina (m) mawaani
 miizaan mayaziin
 miizaan ḥaraara
 miliḥ
 min / min- / minn- / mni-

favor
blessed

yesterday
engineer
lawyer
accountant
prepared

roasted

editor
accounting
accounting
station
thinking
married

birth
who, whom, whose
harbor, port
scale
thermometer
salt
from ; than

min faḍlak	<i>please (to a man, speaker requesting something)</i>
min šaan	<i>for the sake of</i>
min šaan xaaṭrak	<i>for your sake</i>
minhum	<i>from them</i>
minnak	<i>from you</i>
mnilbalad	<i>from the town</i>
huwwē 'akbar minni	<i>he is older than I am</i>
minhaaj manaahij	<i>program</i>
misik bimsik	<i>hold, seize</i>
mislim mislme mislmiin	<i>Moslem</i>
mista9jil mista9ijle	<i>in a hurry</i>
mista9ijliin	
mist9idd mist9idde	<i>ready</i>
mist9iddiin	
miš	<i>not</i>
miš baṭṭaal	<i>not bad</i>
miš heek ?	<i>isn't it so ?</i>
mišmiš	<i>apricots</i>
mištaa' mištaa'a mištaa'iin	<i>longing</i>
mit'assif mit'assfe mit'assfiin	<i>sorry</i>
mit'axxir mit'axxre	<i>late</i>
mit'axxriin	
mitil	<i>like</i>
mitil maa (+ verb)	<i>as, as much as</i>

mitir mtaar	<i>meter</i>
mit9ahhid mit9ahhdiin	<i>contractor</i>
mit9allim mit9allme	<i>educated</i>
mit9allmiin	
miyye / miit / mit-	<i>hundred</i>
miit 'alf	<i>one hundred thousand</i>
miteen	<i>two hundred</i>
mi9de mi9ad or mi9daat	<i>stomach</i>
mnawwa9 mnawwa9a	<i>varied</i>
mnawwa9iin	
mniiḥ mniiḥa mnaaḥ	<i>good</i>
mooz	<i>bananas</i>
mrattab mrattabe mrattabiin	<i>well arranged</i>
msaaḥir msaaḥre msaaḥriin	<i>traveling</i>
msaa9ade msaa9adaat	<i>helping</i>
msaa9id msaa9diin	<i>assistant</i>
msajjal msajjale msajjaliin	<i>registered</i>
msakkar msakkara msakkariin	<i>closed</i>
msoogar msoogara msoogariin	<i>registered</i>
mtarjim mtarjmiin	<i>translator</i>
mudiir mudara(a')	<i>director, manager</i>
muftaaḥ mafatiiḥ	<i>key</i>
muhandis muhandisiin	<i>engineer</i>
muhimm muhimme	<i>important</i>
muhimmiin	

muḥaamaah (f)	<i>law</i>
muḥaami muḥaamiin	<i>lawyer</i>
muḥaasabaat (pl)	<i>accounting</i>
muḥaasabé	<i>accounting</i>
muḥaasib muḥaasbiin	<i>accountant</i>
muḥarrir muḥarririin	<i>editor</i>
mujaadale mujaadalaat	<i>dispute</i>
mukaafaha	<i>combating</i>
mulḥaq mulḥaqa mulḥaqiin	<i>annexed</i>
mulḥaq mulḥaqiin	<i>attaché</i>
mumkin	<i>possible</i>
muntaxab muntáxabe	<i>elected</i>
muntaxabiin	
musaa9ade	<i>helping</i>
mustašaar mustašaariin	<i>counselor</i>
mustašfa (m) mustašfayaat	<i>hospital</i>
musta9jal musta9jale	<i>prompt, quick, hurried</i>
musta9jaliin	
mušaahade mušaahadaat	<i>personal observation</i>
mutarjim mutarjimiin	<i>translator</i>
muttaḥid muttāḥide	<i>united</i>
muttaḥidiin	
muusiiqa	<i>music</i>
musiiqi musiiqiyye	<i>music (adj.)</i>
muxliṣ muxílṣa muxílṣiin	<i>sincere</i>
muxtaar maxatiir	<i>mukhtar (headman)</i>

304 (Vocab. I)

mwaffa' mwaffa'a mwaffa'iin	<i>prosperous, successful</i>
mwazzaf mwazzafiin	<i>official</i>
m9abba (m) m9abbaay (f)	<i>filled out</i>
m9abbayiin	
m9allim m9allmiin	<i>teacher</i>

M

mayy (f)	<i>water</i>
mayyitna	<i>our water</i>

N

n'aal bin'aal	<i>be said</i>
na"a bina"i	<i>choose</i>
na'aṣ bun'uṣ	<i>decrease</i>
naa'ib nuwwaab	<i>deputy</i>
naa'ib 'unṣul	<i>vice consul</i>
naabuli (f)	<i>Naples</i>
naada binaadi	<i>call</i>
naafas binaafis	<i>compete</i>

(Vocab. I) 305

naahye nawaahi	<i>side, aspect</i>
naam binaam	<i>sleep</i>
naas (pl)	<i>people</i>
naasab binaasib	<i>be convenient, be suitable</i>
naasif naašfe naašfiin	<i>dry</i>
naayib nuwwaab	<i>deputy</i>
naayib 'unşul	<i>vice consul</i>
naazil naazle naazliin	<i>staying</i>
naḍḍaf binaḍḍif	<i>clean</i>
nafas	<i>breath</i>
nafs	<i>self ; soul ; same</i>
nafs lwa't	<i>the same time</i>
najah binjah	<i>succeed</i>
najjah binajjih	<i>make succeed</i>
najme njuum	<i>star</i>
nasiib nasaayib	<i>relative</i>
našiib	<i>lot</i>
našra našraat	<i>bulletin</i>
nataf bintif	<i>pluck</i>
nazzal binazzil	<i>make (something) come down</i>
na9am	<i>yes</i>
na9iiman	<i>may it be to your pleasure</i>
	<i>(expression said to someone</i>
	<i>who has just had a haircut,</i>
	<i>a shave, or a bath)</i>
na9na9	<i>mint</i>

nbaşat binbşił	<i>have a good time, be happy</i>
nbiid	<i>wine</i>
nḍiif nḍiife nḍaaf	<i>clean</i>
nfajar binifjir	<i>explode</i>
nfataḥ biniftiḥ	<i>be opened</i>
nhaar	<i>daytime</i>
nḥabb binḥabb	<i>be liked</i>
nḥaka binḥaka	<i>be said</i>
nihna	<i>we</i>
niisaan	<i>April</i>
nisi binsa	<i>forget</i>
niswaan (pl).	<i>women, wives</i>
niyaabi niyaabiyye	<i>parliamentary</i>
niyaabiyyiin	
njaaş	<i>pears</i>
noo9 'anwaa9	<i>sort</i>
nšaalla	<i>if God wills</i>
ntaxab bintxib	<i>elect</i>
nṭaba9 binṭbi9	<i>be printed</i>
nṭawa binṭwi	<i>be folded</i>
nu'saan	<i>deficiency</i>
nukte nukat	<i>joke, witty remark</i>
numra numar	<i>number</i>
nusxa nusax	<i>copy</i>
nuşş nşaaş	<i>half, middle</i>

nuur	'anwaar	<i>light</i>
nzaar	binzaar	<i>be visited</i>
n9add	bin9add	<i>be counted, be countable</i>

P

proova	proovaat	<i>fitting</i>
--------	----------	----------------

Q

qadiyye	qaḍaaya	<i>cause, question</i>
qaanuun	qawaaniin	<i>law</i>
qird	quruuḍ	<i>loan</i>
qisim	'aqsaa	<i>part, division, section</i>
qtarah	biqtriḥ	<i>propose</i>

R

ra"ā	bira"i	<i>promote</i>
ra'i	'aaraa'	<i>opinion</i>

ra'iis	ru'asa(a')	<i>head man</i>
	ra'iis baladiyye	<i>mayor</i>
	ra'iis wazaara	<i>prime minister</i>
ra's		<i>dancing</i>
raabi9	raab9a	<i>fourth</i>
raad	biriid	<i>want</i>
raafa'	biraafi'	<i>accompany</i>
raafa9	biraafi9	<i>defend</i>
raahib	ruhbaan	<i>monk</i>
raaḥ	biruuḥ	<i>go</i>
raaḥa		<i>rest</i>
raaji9	raaj9a	<i>returning</i>
raakib	raakbe	<i>riding</i>
raas	ruus	<i>head</i>
	raas baṣal	<i>an onion</i>
	raas fijil	<i>a radish</i>
raayih	raayḥa	<i>going</i>
rabba	birabbi	<i>educate</i>
rabii9		<i>spring</i>
radd	birudd	<i>return, send back, answer</i>
raḥ-	/raayih	<i>going to, will, shall</i>
ramaadi	ramaadiyye	<i>gray</i>
	ramaadiyyiin	
rasmi	rasmiyye	<i>formal, official</i>
	rasmiyyiin	
raṣiḥ		<i>a cold</i>

rattab birattib
 rayy
 riħle riħlaat
 riji9 birja9
 rijjaal rjaal
 rikib birkab
 rubu9 rbaa9
 ruuħ 'arwaah
 ruusi ruusiyye ruus
 ruzz
 rxiiş rxiiša rxaas

put in order
irrigation
journey
return
man
ride
quarter
spirit
Russian
rice
inexpensive

saari saariye
 saa9a saa9aat
 saa9a mnabbih
 saa9aati pl. saa9aatiyye
 saa9ad bisaa9id
 sabaanix
 saba9 ʔa9s / saba9 ʔa9sar
 saba9 ʔa9sar sane
 sabb bisibb
 sab9a / sabi9 / sab9
 sabi9 tuşhur
 sab9 sniin
 sab9iin
 sadda' bisaddi'
 safaara safaaraat
 safar
 safiir sufara(a')
 safra safraat
 sahra sahraat
 sakan buskun
 sakkan bisakkin
 sakkar bisakkir
 salaam
 'assalaamu 9alaykum
 salaame

contagious
hour, watch
alarm clock
watchmaker
help
spinach
seventeen
seventeen years
curse
seven
seven months
seven years
seventy
believe
embassy
travel
ambassador
trip
evening party
dwell
house
close
peace
the peace upon you
safety

S

sa'al bis'al
 saada (invariable adj.)
 saabi9 saab9a
 saadis saadse
 saafar bisaafir
 saaha saahaat
 saahib saahbe saahbiin
 saakin saakne saakniin
 saami9 saam9a saam9iin

ask
plain
seventh
sixth
travel
courtyard
pulling
dwelling
hearing, having heard

sadda' bisaddi'
 safaara safaaraat
 safar
 safiir sufara(a')
 safra safraat
 sahra sahraat
 sakan buskun
 sakkan bisakkin
 sakkar bisakkir
 salaam
 'assalaamu 9alaykum
 salaame

salaamtak	<i>your safety (an expression said to a person who is sick)</i>	sikke sikak	<i>rail</i>
sallam bisallim	<i>keep safe ; greet</i>	sikkit hədiid	<i>railway</i>
'alla ysallmak	<i>may God keep you (in reply to ma9 ssalaame)</i>	sikkiin sakakiin	<i>knife</i>
sallimli 9alee(h)	<i>say hello to him for me</i>	silim bislam	<i>be safe</i>
salle sallaat	<i>basket</i>	simi9 bisma9	<i>hear</i>
sama	<i>sky</i>	sinama sinamaat	<i>movie, movie house</i>
samaḥ bismaḥ	<i>permit</i>	sinn snaan	<i>tooth</i>
btismahli bsiigaara ?	<i>may I take a cigarette ?</i>	sinn tuum	<i>a clove of garlic</i>
samak	<i>fish</i>	sitt (f) sittaat	<i>grandmother</i>
samake samakaat	<i>a fish</i>	sitte / sitt	<i>six</i>
sanduu' sanadii'	<i>box</i>	sitt sniin	<i>six years</i>
sanawi sanawiyye	<i>annual</i>	sittiin	<i>sixty</i>
sane sniin	<i>year</i>	sitt ʔa9š / sitt ʔa9šar	<i>sixteen</i>
sawa	<i>together</i>	sitt ʔa9šar sane	<i>sixteen years</i>
sayyaara sayyaaraat	<i>car</i>	siyaahā	<i>tourism</i>
sayyid	<i>Mr.</i>	siyaase	<i>politics</i>
sa9al bus9ul	<i>cough</i>	siyaasi siyaasiyye	<i>political</i>
sa9iid sa9iide su9ada	<i>happy</i>	si9ir 'as9aar	<i>price</i>
sa9iide mbaarake	<i>good night (in reply)</i>	ssabt	<i>Saturday</i>
sbanyooli sbanyooliyye	<i>Spanish</i>	ssu9uudiyye	<i>Saudi Arabia</i>
sbanyool		stağfar bistağfir	<i>seek forgiveness</i>
seef syuuf	<i>sword</i>	'astağfiru llaa or stağfaralla	<i>I beg forgiveness of God (a reply to a compliment)</i>
sifir şfaar	<i>zero</i>	staha" bistḥi"	<i>deserve</i>
siid syaad	<i>grandfather ; master</i>	stahla bistahli	<i>find nice</i>
siigaara siigaaraat or sagaayir	<i>cigarette</i>		

stanna bistanna
staqall bistqill
staraah bistriih
stašaar bistašiir
sta9add bist9idd
sta9jal bista9jil
sta9mal bista9mil
stuudyo stuudyowaat
su'aal su'aalaat or 'as'ile
sukkar
suruur
suu' (f) swaa'
suuriyya
su9aal
swadd biswadd
sxuune

wail
be independent
rest
consult
get ready
hurry
use
studio
question
sugar
pleasure
market
Syria
coughing
become black
fever

šabaah
šabaah lxeer
šabaah lxeeraat
šabaah nnuur
šabaahi šabaahiyye
šaaḍar bišaaḍir
šabb bišubb
šabi šubyaan
šaḍar bušḍur
šaḍḍar bišaḍḍir
šaḥaafe
šaḥaafi šaḥaafiyye
šaḥḥ bišihḥ
šaḥḥteen
šaḥiife šuḥuf
šaḥin šhuun
šalaṭa šalaṭaat
šallah bišallih
šaṭih šṭuuh
šaṭir 'aṣṭur / tuṣṭur or ṣṭuur
tlat tuṣṭur
šeef
šeefi šeefiyye
šeefiyye šeefiyyaat
šihḥa

morning
good morning
good morning (in reply)
good morning (in reply)
morning (adj.)
confiscate
pour
boy, child
come out
export
journalism
journalistic
be available
two healths (in reply to daayme)
newspaper
plate
salad
repair
roof
line
three lines
summer
summer (adj.)
summertime
health

šaabuun
šaahib ('a)šḥaab
šaan9a šaan9aat
šaar bišiir

soap
friend ; owner
maid
become ; take place

şihhi şihhiyye
 şinaa9a şinaa9aat
 şinaa9i şinaa9iyye
 şoot (‘a)şwaat
 şşubuh
 şuğra
 şuħufi şuħufiyyiin
 şultaan şalaťiin
 şuuf
 ş9uube ş9uubaat

healthy
industry
industrial
voice
the morning
minor (f)
journalist
sultan
wool
difficulty

şahir ‘ašhur / tušhur
 tlat tušhur
 šajar
 šakar buškur
 šamandar
 šanta šantaat
 šaraf
 šarah bišrah
 šarii9a
 šarq

month
three months
trees
thank
beets
suit case, brief case
honor
explain
religious law of Islam
east

ššarq l’awšať
 ššarq l’adna
 ššarq l’aqša

the Middle East
the Near East
the Far East

šarraf bišarraf
 šaršaf šaraašif
 šatawi šatawiyye
 šatawiyye šatawiyyaat
 šatať bušťuf
 šaxar bušxur
 šaxš ‘ašxaaš
 šaxši šaxšiyye
 šaxšiyyan
 šaxšiyye šaxšiyyaat
 ša9b
 ša9ir

honor
sheet
winter (adj.)
wintertime
wash down
snore
person
personal
personally
personality
people
hair

S

ša’fe šu’af
 šaaf bišuuf
 šaami šaamiyye šwaam
 šaan
 šaari9 šawaari9
 šaay
 šaayif šaayfe šaayfiin
 šabah
 šabah ‘ašbaah

piece
look, see
Damascene
matter, concern
street
tea
looking, seeing
resemblance
phantom

ša9ra ša9raat
 šbaaṭ
 šeex šyuux
 šhaade šhaadaat
 šii 'ašya(a')
 širib bišrab
 širke širkaat
 širkit ṭayaraan
 šita (m)
 šmaal
 šoob
 šooke šuwak
 šooraba
 ššaam (f)
 štaa' bištaa'
 štaḡal bištḡil
 štara bištri
 šubbaak šababiik
 šuḡul 'ašḡaal
 šukran
 šurub
 šuu
 šuu maalo ?
 šuu maa (+ verb)
 šwayy (f)

a hair
February
sheikh
certificate, testimony, diploma
thing, something
drink
company
airline
winter
left (side)
heat
fork
soup
Damascus
long for
work
buy
window
work, busniess
thank you
drinking
what
what's wrong with him ?
whatever
a little bit

šwayyit sukkar
 šwayy, šwayy

a little bit of sugar
slowly

T

t'aashaṣ bit'aashaṣ
 t'ammal bit'ammal
 t'assaf bit'assaf
 t'assas bit'assas
 t'axxar bit'axxar
 t'iil t'iile t'aal
 ta'riiban
 taab bituub
 taajir tujjaar
 taalit taalte
 taamin taamne
 taani taanye
 taariix tawaariix
 taasi9 taas9a
 taḥriir
 taḥsiin
 taḥt
 taḥtaani taḥtaaniyye

be punished
hope
be sorry
be established, be founded
be late
heavy
approximately
repent
merchant
third
eighth
second, other
history ; date
ninth
editing
improving
under
under (adj.)

talaa9ub	<i>being deceitful</i>
talabbuk	<i>being upset</i>
talabbuk mi9de	<i>upset stomach</i>
talfan bitalfin	<i>telephone</i>
talj	<i>ice</i>
tall tlaal	<i>hill</i>
tamaanye /taman /tamn	<i>eight</i>
taman tušhur	<i>eight months</i>
tamn sniin	<i>eight years</i>
tamaniin	<i>eighty</i>
taman ʔa9š /taman ʔa9sar	<i>eighteen</i>
taman ʔa9sar sane	<i>eighteen years</i>
tamm bitamm	<i>remain</i>
tammuuz	<i>July</i>
tanɖiif	<i>cleaning</i>
tannuura tananiir	<i>skirt</i>
tanziim	<i>organizing</i>
tarak bitrik or butruk	<i>leave</i>
tarbiye	<i>education</i>
tarjame tarjamaat	<i>translation</i>
tasjiil tasjiilaat	<i>recording</i>
tašliih	<i>arming</i>
tasliih	<i>repairing</i>
taʔbii' taʔbii'aat	<i>application</i>
tawsii9	<i>expanding</i>
taxašsuš	<i>specialty, specialization</i>

320 (Vocab. I)

taxfiid	<i>lowering</i>
taxt txunte	<i>bed</i>
tazwiid	<i>supplying</i>
ta9aal	<i>come !</i>
ta9diil ta9diilaat	<i>amendment, modification</i>
ta9liim ta9aaliim	<i>teaching</i>
ta9liimaat (pl)	<i>instructions</i>
tbaaḥas bitbaaḥas	<i>discuss</i>
tfaɖɖal bitfaɖɖal	<i>be kind enough to ...</i>
tfaɖɖal	<i>please (to a man, speaker offering something)</i>
tfaɖɖal striih	<i>please sit down</i>
tfaɖɖal ma9i	<i>please come with me</i>
tfarraɖ bitfarraɖ	<i>look around</i>
tiin	<i>figs</i>
tijaari tijaariyye tijaariyyiin	<i>commercial</i>
tikram	<i>with pleasure, gladly</i>
tijaara	<i>commerce</i>
tilyaani tilyaaniyye tilyaan	<i>Italian</i>
tisi9 ʔa9š /tisi9 ta9sar	<i>nineteen</i>
tisi9 ta9sar sane	<i>nineteen years</i>
tis9a /tisi9 /tis9	<i>nine</i>
tisi9 tušhur	<i>nine months</i>
tis9 sniin	<i>nine years</i>
tis9iin	<i>ninety</i>

(Vocab. I) 321

tišriin (l)yawwal
tišriin (t)taani
tizkaar tizkaaraat
ti9ib bit9ab
tlaa'a bitlaa'a
tlaate / tlaat / tlat
tlaat wlaad
tlat tiyyaam
tlaatiin
tlaa9ab bitlaa9ab
tlat ʔa9š / tlat ʔa9šar
tlat ʔa9šar sane
tnaawab bitnaawab
tneen f. tinteem
tra"ʔa bitra"ʔa
treen treenaat
tsaa9ad bitsaa9ad
tšarraaf bitšarraaf
tšarraafna
ttafa' bittfi'
ttaḥad bitthid
ttalaata
ttineen
tuffaah
tuffaaha tuffaahaat

October
November
memorial, monument
become tired
meet together
three
three children
three days
thirty
be deceitful
thirteen
thirteen years
take turns at
two
be promoted
train
be helped
be honored
how do you do ?
agree
be united
Tuesday
Monday
apples
an apple

tult tlaat
turkiyya
tuum
tuul
txarraaj bitxarraaj
txaššaš bitxaššaš
t9ajjab bit9ajjab
t9allam bit9allam
t9arraaf bit9arraaf
t9ašša bit9ašša
t9azzab bit9azzab

third
Turkey
garlic
mulberries
be graduated
specialize
be astonished
learn, be taught
be introduced
dine
suffer

T

ʔa's
ʔaab biṭiib
ʔaabi' ʔawaabi'
ʔaabi9 ʔawaabi9
ʔaali9 ʔaal9a ʔaal9iin
ʔaawle ʔaawlaat
ʔaaza (invariable adj.)
ʔabba' biṭabbi'
ʔalaa'
ʔʔalaa' bittlaate

weather, climate
recover
floor, story
stamp
coming out
table
fresh
apply, put into practice
divorce
triple divorce

ɬalab ɬalabaat	<i>request</i>
ɬalab buɬlub	<i>request</i>
ɬall biɬull	<i>look</i>
ɬamman biɬammin	<i>keep (someone) informed</i>
ɬaraablus (f)	<i>Tripoli</i>
ɬarii' ɬuru'	<i>road, way</i>
ɬayaraan	<i>aviation</i>
ɬayyaara ɬayyaaraat	<i>airplane</i>
ɬayyib ɬayyibe ɬayybiin	<i>good, tasty</i>
ɬayyib	<i>all right</i>
ɬeer ɬyuur	<i>bird</i>
ɬibaa9a	<i>typing</i>
ɬibb	<i>medicine</i>
ɬifil 'aɬfaal	<i>child</i>
ɬiin	<i>clay</i>
ɬili9 biɬla9	<i>go up, come out, amount to</i>
ɬna9s / ɬna9sar	<i>twelve</i>
ɬna9sar sane	<i>twelve years</i>
ɬoor	<i>ox</i>
ɬuub	<i>bricks</i>
ɬuul	<i>length</i>
ɬuul ɬayaati	<i>all my life</i>
ɬuul lleel winnhaar	<i>all night and day</i>

324 (Vocab. I)

	W	
w- / wi-		<i>and ; when, while</i>
w'iyye 'awaa'		<i>ukiyeh (200 grams)</i>
wa"af biwa"if		<i>stop</i>
wa't		<i>time</i>
wa't maa(+ verb)		<i>whenever</i>
waa'if waa'fe waa'fiin		<i>standing, stopping, stopped</i>
waajib waajbaat		<i>duty</i>
waahad f. wahde		<i>one</i>
waahad, waahad		<i>one by one</i>
waalde waaldaat		<i>mother</i>
waalid waaldiin		<i>father</i>
wadda biwaddi		<i>lead</i>
wadda9 biwaddi9		<i>see (someone) off</i>
waja9 wjaa9		<i>pain, ache</i>
waja9 baɬin		<i>stomach ache</i>
waja9 dineen		<i>earache</i>
waja9 mi9de		<i>stomach ache</i>
waja9 raas		<i>headache</i>
waja9 snaan		<i>toothache</i>
wakaale wakaalaat		<i>agency</i>

325 (Vocab. I)

wala
 walad wlaad
 walla biwalli
 walla or wallaahi
 war'a war'aat or wraa'
 wara'
 wara' 9inab
 wara
 waşşal biwaşşil
 waṭan 'awṭaan
 waṭani waṭaniyye
 wazaara
 waziir wuzara
 waṣiife waṣaayif
 wa9ad byuu9id
 ween
 ween maa (+verb)
 wilaade wilaadaat
 wilaaye wilaayaat
 lwilaayaat lmuttaḥide
 willa
 wişil byuuşal
 wizaara wizaaraat
 wuṣṭa

at all (with negative)
boy ; child
appoint
by God
sheet of paper
leaves, paper
vine leaves
behind
make (someone) arrive
homeland
national
ministry, cabinet
minister of state
position, job
promise
where
wherever
birth
state ; province
the United States
or
arrive
ministry, cabinet
central (f)

X

xaab bixiib
 xaabar bixaabir
 xaadme xaadmaat
 xaaf bixaaf
 xaal xwaal
 xaale xaalaat
 xaamis xaamse
 xaan bixuun
 xaarṭa xaraayit
 xaaṭir xawaatir
 xaaṭrak

 xabar 'axbaar
 xabbar bixabbir
 xadd xduud
 xaḍḍ bixuḍḍ
 xaffaf bixaffif
 xafiif xafiife xfaaf
 xajjal bixajjil
 xala' bixli'
 xala9 bixla9

fail
communicate with
maid
be afraid
uncle (mother's brother)
aunt (mother's sister)
fifth
betray
map
wish, pleasure
good-by (to a man, said by
person leaving)
news, message
inform
cheek
shake
lighten
light (of weight)
embarrass, put to shame
create
overthrow

xalla bixalli	<i>keep, allow</i>
xallaş bixalliş	<i>finish</i>
xamse/xamis/xams	<i>five</i>
xamis liiraat	<i>five pounds</i>
xams sniin	<i>five years</i>
xamsiin	<i>fifty</i>
xams ʔa9ş / xams ʔa9şar	<i>fifteen</i>
xams ʔa9şar sane	<i>fifteen years</i>
xanziir xanaziir	<i>pig</i>
xarbaan xarbaane	<i>out of order</i>
xarbaaniin	
xariif	<i>fall ; autumn</i>
xariiʔa xaraayit	<i>map</i>
xarj	<i>expenditures</i>
xaruuf xirfaan	<i>lamb</i>
xass	<i>lettuce</i>
xaʔab buxʔub	<i>give a speech</i>
xaʔʔ xʔuuʔ	<i>line</i>
xayyaaʔxayyaaʔiin	<i>tailor</i>
xeeme xeemaat or xyaam	<i>tent</i>
xeer	<i>good fortune, goodness</i>
xeer nsaalla	<i>it's nothing serious, I hope.</i>
xeet xiiʔaan	<i>thread</i>
xidme	<i>service</i>
xiffe	<i>lightness</i>

328 (Vocab. I)

xiʔʔa xiʔaʔ	<i>plan</i>
xoox	<i>plums</i>
xsaara xasaa'ir	<i>loss</i>
xubz	<i>bread</i>
xuʔdra	<i>vegetables</i>
xuʂuuʂi	<i>private</i>
xyaara xyaaaraat	<i>cucumbers</i>
xyaara xyaaaraat	<i>a cucumber</i>

Y

yaa	<i>particle of address and exclamation</i>
yaa siidna	<i>informal term of address</i>
yaa xsaara	<i>(lit. our master)</i>
yaareet	<i>what a shame !</i>
yamiin	<i>if only</i>
yard yardaat	<i>right (side)</i>
ya9ni	<i>yard</i>
yoom ('a)yyaam / tiyyaam	<i>it means, that is, well..., more</i>
lyoom	<i>or less, for instance.</i>
	<i>day</i>
	<i>today</i>

(Vocab. I) 329

llat tiyyaam	three days
yuusif 'afandi	tangerines

Z

za"af biza"if	clap the hands
zaad biziid	increase, exceed
zaahir zaahre	shining
zaar bizzuur	visit
zaat	self, same
zaayir zaayre zaayriin	visiting
zaayir zaayre zuwwar	visitor
zaka (m)	intelligence
zakar buzkur	mention
zamaan	time
zatt bizitt	throw out
zawwad bizawwid	supply
zawwar bizawwir	have (someone) visit
zbaale	garbage
zeet zyuut	oil
zeetuun	olives
zibde	butter
ziraa9a	agriculture

330 (Vocab. I)

ziraa9i ziraa9iyye	agricultural
ziraa9iyyiin	
zirr zraar	button
ziyaara ziyaraaat	visit
zi9il biz9al	be upset
zooj zwaaj	husband
zooje zoojaat	wife
zyaade zyaadaat	increase
zyaara zyaaraal	visit

Z

zaabit zubbaat	officer
zaahir zaahra zaahriin	appearing
zahar bizhar	seem, appear
zann bizunn	suppose
zgiir zgiiire zgaaar	small ; young
zulum	injustice

(Vocab. I) 331

9aadataŋ	<i>usually</i>
9aadi 9aadiyye 9aadiyyiin	<i>regular, ordinary</i>
9aal (invariable adj.)	<i>fine</i>
9aalam	<i>world</i>
9aali 9aalye 9aalyiin	<i>high</i>
9aalim 9ulama	<i>learned man</i>
9aam 'a9waam	<i>year</i>
9aamil 9ummaal	<i>worker</i>
9aammi 9aammiyye	<i>general</i>
9aaraq bi9aariq	<i>oppose</i>
9aašir 9aašre	<i>tenth</i>
9abba bi9abbi	<i>fill out</i>
9adad 'a9daad	<i>number</i>
9add bi9idd	<i>count</i>
9afu	<i>forgiveness, pardon</i>
9afwan	<i>you're welcome (in reply to šukran)</i>
9ala / 9alee- / 9alay- / 9a-	<i>to ; on ; incumbent upon</i>
9ala yamiinak	<i>to your right</i>
9aleek	<i>on you</i>

9alayy	<i>on me</i>
9alyamiin	<i>to the right</i>
9abeeruut	<i>to Beirut</i>
9a(la) mahlak	<i>slow down</i>
9ala haalo	<i>as he was</i>
9ala 9eeni	<i>with pleasure</i>
9ala raasi	<i>with pleasure</i>
9ala keefak	<i>as you wish</i>
9alaa'a 9alaa'aat	<i>relation</i>
9alam 'a9laam	<i>flag</i>
9alla' bi9alli'	<i>hang up</i>
9allam bi9allim	<i>teach</i>
9amal 'a9maal	<i>work</i>
9amali 9amaliyye 9amaliyyiin	<i>practical</i>
9amaliyye 9amaliyyat	<i>operation</i>
9amiid 9umada	<i>dean</i>
9amm 9maam	<i>uncle (father's brother)</i>
9ammaan (f)	<i>Amman</i>
9amme 9ammaat	<i>aunt (father's sister)</i>
9an / 9an- / 9ann-	<i>about</i>
9an 'iznak	<i>by your (m) leave</i>
9anhum	<i>about them</i>
9annak	<i>about you</i>
9an 'ariib	<i>shortly, soon</i>
9ara'	<i>arak (an alcoholic beverage)</i>

9arab (pl)	<i>Arabs</i>
'ibin 9arab	<i>Arab (m)</i>
bint 9arab	<i>Arab (f)</i>
9arabi 9arabiyye 9arab	<i>Arab, Arabic</i>
9araq bi9riđ	<i>offer</i>
9arđ	<i>width</i>
9arraf bi9arraf	<i>introduce</i>
9askari 9askariyye 9askariyyiin	<i>military</i>
9askari 9asaakir	<i>soldier</i>
9aša 9uši	<i>stick</i>
9ašiir	<i>juice</i>
9aša (m)	<i>evening meal</i>
9ašiyye 9ašiyyaat or 9ašaaya	<i>evening</i>
9ašra / 9ašar / 9ašr	<i>ten</i>
9ašar tušhur	<i>ten months</i>
9ašr sniin	<i>nine years</i>
9azam bi9zim	<i>invite</i>
9aziime 9azaayim	<i>banquet</i>
9ažiim 9ažiime 9ažiimiin	<i>great, magnificent</i>
9eele 9iyal	<i>family</i>
9een (f) 9yuun	<i>eye</i>
9iddit ...	<i>several</i>
9iddit marraat	<i>several times</i>
9iid ('a)9yaad	<i>feast day</i>
9iid miilaad	<i>birthday</i>

(Vocab. I) 334

9iid Imiilaad	<i>Christmas</i>
9iid lfiših	<i>Easter</i>
9iid listiqlaal	<i>Independence Day</i>
9iid raas ssane	<i>New Year's Day</i>
9iid lmawlid	<i>birthday of the Prophet</i>
9iid lfiṭir	<i>breaking of the fast of Ramadan</i>
9iid l'ađḥa	<i>feast of the Sacrifice</i>
9ijil 9juul	<i>calf</i>
9ilm 9uluum	<i>knowledge, science</i>
9ilm lijtimaa9	<i>sociology</i>
9ilm nnafs	<i>psychology</i>
9uluum diiniyye	<i>religion, theology</i>
9uluum siyaasiyye	<i>political science</i>
9ilmi 9ilmiyye 9ilmiyyiin	<i>pertaining to knowledge</i>
9imil bi9mal	<i>do, make</i>
9imil 9amaliyye	<i>have an operation</i>
9inab	<i>grapes</i>
9ind / 9in-	<i>in the possession of, have ; chez</i>
9indak	<i>you (m) have</i>
9inna	<i>we have</i>
9iraaqi 9iraaqiyye 9iraqiyyiin	<i>Iraqi</i>
9irif bi9raf	<i>know</i>
9išriin	<i>twenty</i>
9uđu 'a9ḍaa'	<i>member</i>
9ulya	<i>higher ; highest</i>
9umur 'a9maar	<i>age, life</i>
9unwaan 9anawiin	<i>address</i>
9urs 'a9raas	<i>wedding</i>

(Vocab. I) 335

Certain kinds of expressions are omitted from this Vocabulary: many special combinations; most names of places; personal names; some number expressions; words with mainly a grammatical meaning.

A

<i>able, be</i>	'idir bi'dar
<i>about</i>	9an
<i>about (approx.)</i>	hawaali
<i>above</i>	foo'
<i>absence</i>	geebe gubaat
<i>absent, be</i>	gaab bigiib
<i>accompany</i>	raafa' biraafi'
<i>account (bill)</i>	hsaab
<i>accountant</i>	mhaasib mhaasbiin
<i>accounting</i>	m(u)haasabaat (pl)

<i>accounting</i>	m(u)haasabe
<i>ache</i>	waja9 wjaa9
<i>across from</i>	'baal
<i>add</i>	jama9 bijma9
<i>address</i>	9unwaan 9anaawiin
<i>advance</i>	'addam bi'addim
<i>afraid, be</i>	xaaf bixaaf
<i>afternoon</i>	ba9d dduhur
<i>after</i>	ba9id ; ba9id maa(+ verb)
<i>again</i>	min jdiid
<i>age</i>	9umur 'a9maar
<i>agency</i>	wakaale wakaalaat
<i>ago</i>	'abil
<i>agree</i>	ttafa' bittfi'
<i>agriculture</i>	ziraa9a
<i>agricultural</i>	ziraa9i ziraa9iyye ziraa9iyyiin
<i>air (adj.)</i>	jawwi jawwiyye jawwiyyiin
<i>airline</i>	širkit tayaraan
<i>airmail</i>	bariid jawwi
<i>airplane</i>	tayyaara tayyaaraat
<i>airport</i>	maṭaar maṭaaraat
<i>alarm clock</i>	saa9a mnabbih
<i>alcoholic beverage</i>	mašruub mašruubaat
<i>Aleppo</i>	ḥalab (f)
<i>alive</i>	ḥayy ḥayye 'ahyaa'

338 (Vocab. 2)

<i>all</i>	kull
<i>allow</i>	xalla bixalli
<i>all right</i>	ṭayyib
<i>also</i>	kamaan
<i>always</i>	daayman
<i>ambassador</i>	safiir sufara(a')
<i>amendment</i>	ta9diil ta9diilaat
<i>America</i>	'ameerka
<i>American</i>	'ameerkaani 'ameerkaaniyye
	'ameerkaan
<i>Amman</i>	9ammaan
<i>amount</i>	ṭili9 biṭla9
<i>annex</i>	'alḥaq bilḥiq
<i>annexed</i>	mulḥaq mulḥaqa mulḥaqiin
<i>annual</i>	sanawi sanawiyye
<i>answer</i>	jaawab bijaawib ; jaawab -aat
	or 'ajwibe
<i>any</i>	'ayy
<i>anyone</i>	ḥad (a)
<i>appear</i>	zahar biḥzar
<i>appearing</i>	zaahir zaahra zaahriin
<i>apples</i>	tuffaaḥ
<i>application</i>	taṭbii' taṭbii'aat
<i>apply</i>	ṭabba' biṭabbi'
<i>appoint</i>	walla biwalli

(Vocab. 2) 339

<i>appointment</i>	maw9id mawaa9iid
<i>approximately</i>	ta'riiban
<i>apricots</i>	mišmiš
<i>April</i>	niisaan
<i>Arab, Arabic</i>	9arabi 9arabiyye 9arab
<i>arak (an alcoholic beverage)</i>	9ara'
<i>army</i>	jeeš jyuus
<i>arming</i>	tasliih
<i>arrange</i>	dabbar bidabbir
<i>arranged</i>	mrattab mrattabe mrattabiin
<i>arrive</i>	wiṣil byuuṣal
<i>arrive, make (someone)</i>	waṣṣal biwaṣṣil
<i>artichokes</i>	'arḍi šooki
<i>article</i>	maqaale maqaalaat
<i>as</i>	mitil maa (+ verb)
<i>as many as</i>	'add maa (+ verb)
<i>as much as</i>	mitil maa (+verb) ; 'add maa (+ verb)
<i>ask</i>	sa'al bis'al
<i>aspect</i>	naahye nawaahī
<i>assistant</i>	msaa9id msaa9diin
<i>astonished, be</i>	t9ajjab bit9ajjab
<i>attaché</i>	mulḥaq mulḥaqiin
<i>attention</i>	baal
<i>attributed to</i>	mansuub mansuube mansuubiin

340 (Vocab. 2)

<i>August</i>	'aab
<i>aunt (father's sister)</i>	9amme 9ammaat
<i>aunt (mother's sister)</i>	xaale xaalaat
<i>autumn</i>	xariif
<i>available, be</i>	ṣahḥ biṣiḥḥ
<i>aviation</i>	ṭayaraan

B

<i>bachelor</i>	'a9zab 9izbaan
<i>bad</i>	baṭṭaal baṭṭaale baṭṭaaliin
<i>Baghdad</i>	baġdaad (f)
<i>baklava</i>	ba'laawe
<i>bananas</i>	mooz
<i>bank</i>	bank bnuuk
<i>banquet</i>	9aziime 9azaayim
<i>barber</i>	ḥallaa' ḥallaa'iin
<i>basket</i>	salle sallaat
<i>bath (room)</i>	ḥammaam ḥammaamaat
<i>be</i>	kaan bikuun
<i>beans</i>	luubya

(Vocab. 2) 341

<i>beans, dried</i>	faşuulya
<i>beans (Spanish)</i>	fuul
<i>beard</i>	da'in d'uun; lihye liha or lihyaat
<i>because</i>	leeş ; li'anno
<i>become</i>	şaar bişiir
<i>bed</i>	farşe farşaat ; taxt txuute
<i>beef</i>	laħim ba'ar
<i>beer</i>	biira
<i>beets</i>	şamandar
<i>before</i>	'abil ; 'abil maa (+ verb)
<i>begin</i>	bada bibda
<i>beginning</i>	'ibtidaa'
<i>behind</i>	wara
<i>Beirut</i>	beeruut (f)
<i>believe</i>	sadda' bisaddi'
<i>belly</i>	baŋin bŋuun
<i>berry</i>	ħabbe ħabbaat
<i>best</i>	'aħsan
<i>Bethlehem</i>	beet laħim (f)
<i>betray</i>	xaan bixuun
<i>better, best</i>	'aħsan
<i>between</i>	been
<i>big</i>	kbiir kbiire kbaar
<i>bigger, biggest</i>	'akbar kubra (f)
<i>bill</i>	ħsaab

<i>bird</i>	teer tyuur
<i>birth</i>	wilaade wilaadaat
<i>birthday</i>	mawlid ; miilaad
<i>black</i>	'aswad sooda suud
<i>black, become</i>	swadd biswadd
<i>bless</i>	baarak bibaarik
<i>blessed</i>	mabruuk mabruuke mabruu- kiin ; mbaarak mbaarake mbaarakiin
<i>blouse</i>	bluuze bluzaat
<i>blow</i>	habb bihibb
<i>blue</i>	'azra' zar'a zuru'
<i>boat</i>	baaboer bawabiir
<i>book</i>	ktaab kutub
<i>bookstore</i>	maktabe maktabaat
<i>boiled</i>	masluu' masluu'a masluu'iin
<i>bother</i>	ğallab biğallib ; ğalabe ğalabaat
<i>bottle</i>	'annine 'anaani
<i>boundary</i>	ħadd ħduud
<i>boy</i>	şabi şubyaan ; walad wlaad
<i>box</i>	sanduu' sanadii'
<i>bread</i>	xubz
<i>breakfast</i>	ftuur
<i>breath</i>	nafas

<i>brethren</i>	'ixwaan
<i>bricks</i>	tuub
<i>briefcase</i>	šanta šantaat
<i>bring</i>	jaab bijib
<i>broadcast</i>	'azaa9 bizii9
<i>broadcasting</i>	'izaa9a
<i>broiled</i>	mašwi mašwiyye mašwiyyiin
<i>brother</i>	'ax ixwe
<i>brown</i>	binni binniyye binniyyiin
<i>bruised</i>	marḍuuḍ marḍuuḍa
	marḍuuḍiin
<i>build</i>	bana bibni
<i>bulletin</i>	našra našraat
<i>business</i>	šugul 'ašgaal
<i>busy</i>	mašguul mašguule mašguuliin
<i>but</i>	bass ; laakin
<i>butter</i>	zibde
<i>button</i>	zirr zraar
<i>buy</i>	štara bištri

C

<i>cabbage</i>	malfuuf
<i>cabinet</i>	wazaara wazaaraat ; wizaara wizaaraat
<i>Cairo</i>	lqaahira
<i>calf</i>	9ijil 9juul
<i>call</i>	naada binaadi
<i>camel</i>	jamal jmaal
<i>car</i>	sayyaara sayyaaraat
<i>carrots</i>	jazar
<i>carry out (fulfill)</i>	'ajra bijri
<i>cauliflower</i>	'arnabiit
<i>cause</i>	qaḍiyye qaḍaaya
<i>cemetery</i>	ma'bara ma'aabir
<i>central</i>	'awṣaṭ wuṣṭa (f)
<i>certainly</i>	ma9luum
<i>certificate</i>	šhaade šhaadaat
<i>cheek</i>	xadd xduud
<i>cigarette</i>	siigaara siigaaraat or sagaayir
<i>chair</i>	kursi karaasi

<i>cheese</i>	jibne
<i>cherries</i>	karaz
<i>chickens</i>	jaaj
<i>chickpeas</i>	ħummuṣ
<i>child</i>	ṭifil 'aṭfaal ; walad wlaad
<i>chocolate (hot)</i>	kakaaw (f)
<i>choose</i>	na"a bina"i
<i>Christian</i>	masiiḥi masiiḥiyye masiiḥiyyiin or masiiḥiyye
<i>Christmas</i>	9iid lmiilaad
<i>church</i>	kniise kanaayis
<i>clap (the hands)</i>	za"af biza"if
<i>clay</i>	ṭiin
<i>clean</i>	naḍḍaf binadḍif ; ndiif ndiife ndaaf
<i>cleaning</i>	tanḍiif
<i>clerk</i>	kaatib kuttaab
<i>climate</i>	ṭa's
<i>clock</i>	saa9a saa9aat
<i>close</i>	sakkar bisakkir
<i>closed</i>	msakkar msakkara msakkariin
<i>cloth</i>	'maas
<i>cloud</i>	ḡeeme ḡeemaat or ḡyuum
<i>coffee</i>	'ahwe
<i>coffee shop</i>	'ahwe 'ahaawi

<i>cola</i>	koola
<i>cold (illness)</i>	raṣiḥ
<i>coldness</i>	bard
<i>collect</i>	jamma9 bijammi9
<i>college</i>	kulliyye kulliyyaat
<i>color</i>	loon 'alwaan
<i>come</i>	'aja biiji
<i>come!</i>	ta9aal
<i>come out</i>	ṭili9 biṭla9
<i>comb</i>	maṣṣaṭ bimaṣṣiṭ
<i>combat</i>	kaafaḥ bikaafiḥ
<i>combating</i>	mukaafaha
<i>coming, having come</i>	jaay jaaye jaayiin
<i>coming out</i>	ṭaali9 ṭaal9a ṭaal9iin
<i>command</i>	'amar bu'mur ; 'amir 'awaamir
<i>commerce</i>	tijaara
<i>commercial</i>	tijaari tijaariyye tijaariyyiin
<i>communicate with</i>	xaabar bixaabir
<i>company</i>	ṣirke ṣirkaat
<i>compete</i>	naafas binaafis
<i>compose</i>	'allaf bi'allif
<i>compulsory</i>	'ijbaari 'ijbaariyye 'ijbaariyyiin
<i>concern</i>	'ahamm bihim ; 'ihtimaam
<i>concerned, be</i>	htamm bihtamm

<i>condition</i>	haal 'ahwaal ; haale haalaat
<i>confiscate</i>	şaaqlar bişaaqlir
<i>constructing</i>	'inşaa'
<i>consul</i>	'unşul 'anaaşil
<i>consulate</i>	'unşliyye 'unşliyyaat
<i>consult</i>	staşaar bistaşir
<i>contagious</i>	saari saarye
<i>contractor</i>	mit9ahhid mit9ahhdiin
<i>convenient, be</i>	naasab binaasib
<i>copy</i>	nusxa nusax
<i>correct</i>	mazbuuŧ mazbuuŧa
	mazbuuŧiin
<i>correspond</i>	kaatab bikaatib
<i>corridor</i>	mamşa (m) mamaaşi
<i>cotton</i>	'uŧun
<i>cough</i>	sa9al bus9ul
<i>coughing</i>	su9aal
<i>counselor</i>	mustaşaar mustaşaariin
<i>count</i>	9add bi9idd
<i>counted, be</i>	n9add bin9add
<i>country, countries</i>	blaad (f)
<i>court</i>	maḥkame maḥaakim
<i>courteous, be</i>	jaamal bijaamil
<i>courtyard</i>	saahā saahaat
<i>cows</i>	ba'ar

<i>create</i>	xala' bixl'i
<i>cross roads</i>	mafra' mafaari'
<i>cucumbers</i>	xyaar
<i>cup</i>	finjaan fanajiin
<i>current</i>	daarij daarje daarjiin
<i>curse</i>	sabb bisibb
<i>customs</i>	gumruk gamaarik
<i>cut</i>	'aşş bi'aşş
<i>cut</i>	'aŧa9 bi'ŧa9 ; ma'suuş ma'suuşa
	ma'suuşiin
<i>cut out (a garment)</i>	faşşal bifaşşil
<i>cutting</i>	'aaşiş 'aaşsa 'aaşşiin
<i>cut to pieces</i>	'aŧŧa9 bi'aŧŧi9

D

<i>Damascene</i>	şaami şaamiyye şwaam
<i>Damascus</i>	şşaam (f)
<i>dancing</i>	ra's
<i>date</i>	taariix tawaariix
<i>daughter</i>	bint (f) banaat
<i>day</i>	yoom (ti)yyaam

<i>daytime</i>	nhaar	<i>direct (manage)</i>	'adaar bidiir
<i>dearer, dearest</i>	'ahabb	<i>direct (point to)</i>	dall bidill
<i>dean</i>	9amiid 9umada	<i>director</i>	mudiir mudara(a')
<i>deceitful, be</i>	tlaa9ab billaa9ab	<i>discuss</i>	tbaahas bitbaahas
<i>deceitful, being</i>	talaa9ub	<i>disease</i>	marad 'amraad
<i>December</i>	kaanuun (l)'awwal	<i>dispute</i>	jaadal bijaadil ; mujaadale
<i>decide</i>	batt bibitt		mujaadalaat
<i>decrease</i>	na'aş bun'uş	<i>disturb</i>	'az9aj biz9ij
<i>defend</i>	raafa9 biraa9	<i>division</i>	qisim 'aqsaa
<i>deficiency</i>	nu'saan	<i>divorce</i>	talaa'
<i>department</i>	daa'ira dawaa'ir	<i>do</i>	9imil bi9mal
<i>deputy</i>	naayib (or naa'ib) nuwwaab	<i>doctor</i>	duktoor dakaatra
<i>delay</i>	'axxar bi'axxir	<i>domestic</i>	daaxli daaxliyye
<i>delighted</i>	masruur masruura masruuriin	<i>donkey</i>	hmaal hamiir
<i>demolish</i>	hadd bihidd	<i>door</i>	baab bwaab
<i>deserve</i>	staħa" bistħi"	<i>dress</i>	fusṭaan faṣaṭiin
<i>destroy</i>	hadam bihdim	<i>drink</i>	şirib bişrab
<i>Dhahran</i>	qḍahraan (f)	<i>drinking</i>	şurub
<i>dialect</i>	lahje lahjaat	<i>dry</i>	naaşıf naaşe naaşiin
<i>difference, make a</i>	fara' bifri'	<i>ducks</i>	baṭṭ
<i>different</i>	geer	<i>duty</i>	waajib waajbaat
<i>difficulty</i>	ş9uube ş9uubaat	<i>dwell</i>	sakan buskun
<i>digest</i>	haḍam bihḍim	<i>dwelling</i>	saakin saakne saakniin
<i>dine</i>	t9aşa bit9aşa		
<i>diploma</i>	şhaade şhaadaat		

E

<i>ear</i>	daan dineen (<i>dual</i>)
<i>ear ache</i>	waja9 dineen
<i>early</i>	bakkiir
<i>east</i>	šarq
<i>Easter</i>	9iid lfiših
<i>eat</i>	'akal byaakul
<i>eat, thing to</i>	ma'kuulaat (pl)
<i>economic</i>	'iqtišaaqi 'iqtišaaqiyye
	'iqtišaaqiyyiin
<i>economics</i>	'iqtišaaq
<i>edit</i>	ħarrar biħarrir
<i>editing</i>	taħriir
<i>editor</i>	m(u)ħarrir m(u)ħarririin
<i>educate</i>	rabba birabbi
<i>educated</i>	mit9allim mit9allme
	mit9allmiin
<i>education</i>	tarbiye
<i>eggplants</i>	beetinjaan
<i>eggs</i>	beed

<i>Egypt</i>	mašir (f)
<i>eight</i>	tamaanye
<i>eighteen</i>	taman ʔa9š
<i>eighth</i>	taamin taamne
<i>eighty</i>	tamaniin
<i>elect</i>	ntaxab bintxib
<i>elected</i>	muntaxab muntáxabe
	muntaxabiin
<i>electing</i>	'intixaab
<i>elections</i>	'intixaabaat (pl)
<i>electricity</i>	kahraba
<i>eleven</i>	ħda9š
<i>embassy</i>	safaara safaaraat
<i>embarrass</i>	xajjal bixajjil
<i>empty</i>	faadi faadye faadyiin
<i>engineer</i>	m (u) handis -iin
<i>engineering</i>	handase handasaat
<i>England</i>	'ingiltra ; blaad lingliiz
<i>English</i>	'ingliizi 'ingliiziyye 'ingliiz
<i>enlarge</i>	kabbar bikabbir
<i>enough, be</i>	kaffa bikaffi
<i>established, be</i>	t'assas bi'tassas
<i>evening</i>	masa ; 9ašiyye 9ašiyyaat or
	9ašaaya
<i>evening (adj.)</i>	massaa'i masaa'iyye

<i>evening meal</i>	9aša (m)
<i>evening party</i>	sahra sahraat
<i>every</i>	kull
<i>example, for</i>	matalan
<i>exceed</i>	zaad biziid
<i>except</i>	'illa
<i>expanding</i>	tawsii9
<i>expenditures</i>	xarj
<i>expensive</i>	ğaali ġaalye ġaalyiin
<i>expensive, be</i>	ġili biġla
<i>more expensive, most expensive</i>	'aġla
<i>explode</i>	nfajar binfjir
<i>exploding</i>	'infijaar
<i>explain</i>	fahham bifahhim ; šaraḥ
	bišraḥ
<i>export</i>	šaqqar bišaqqir
<i>eye</i>	9een (f) 9yuun

F

<i>factory</i>	ma9mal ma9aamil
<i>fail</i>	xaab bixiib
<i>fall (autumn)</i>	xariif

<i>family</i>	9eele 9iyal
<i>family</i>	'ahil (pl)
<i>famous</i>	mašhuur mašhuura
	mašhuuriin
<i>far</i>	b9iid b9iide b9aad
<i>farther, farthest</i>	'ab9ad ; 'aqša
<i>father</i>	'ab 'abbayaat or 'aabaa'
<i>father</i>	waalid waaldiin
<i>favor</i>	faḍil 'afḍaal ; ma9ruuf
<i>feast day</i>	9iid 'a9yaad
<i>February</i>	šbaat
<i>festival</i>	9iid 'a9yaad
<i>fever</i>	ḥaraara ; sxuune
<i>fifteen</i>	xams ta9š
<i>fifth</i>	xaamis xaamse
<i>fifty</i>	xamsiin
<i>figs</i>	tiin
<i>fill out</i>	9abba bi9abbi
<i>filled out</i>	m9abba (m) m9abbaay
	m9abbayiin
<i>financial</i>	maali maaliyye
<i>find</i>	laa'a bilaa'i
<i>fine</i>	kwayyis kwayyse kwayysiin
<i>fine</i>	9aal (invariable adj.)
<i>finish</i>	xallaš bixalliš

<i>first</i>	'awwal 'uula 'awaa'il
<i>fish</i>	samak
<i>fitting</i>	proova proovaat
<i>five</i>	xamse
<i>flag</i>	9alam 'a9laam
<i>flirt</i>	ḡaazal biḡaazil
<i>floor</i>	'ard (f)
<i>floor (story)</i>	ṭaabi' ṭawaabi'
<i>flowing</i>	jaari jaarye jaaryiin
<i>folded, be</i>	nṭawa binṭwi
<i>food</i>	'akil
<i>forbid</i>	harram biharrim
<i>forget</i>	nisi binsa
<i>forgiveness</i>	9afu
<i>fork</i>	ṣooke ṣuwak
<i>formal</i>	rasmi rasmiyye rasmiyyiin
<i>forty</i>	'arb9iin
<i>foundation</i>	'asaas 'asaasaat
<i>founded, be</i>	t'assas bi'tassas
<i>fountain pen</i>	'alam ḥibir
<i>four</i>	'arba9a
<i>fourteen</i>	'arba9 ṭa9ṣ
<i>fourth</i>	raabi9 raab9a
<i>France</i>	fraansa
<i>free</i>	ḥurr ḥurra 'aḥraar

356 (Vocab. 2)

<i>free (empty)</i>	faaḍi faaḍye faaḍyiin
<i>free, be</i>	fiḍi bifḍa
<i>French</i>	fransaawi fransaawiyye
	fransaawiiyyiin
<i>fresh</i>	ṭaaza (invariable adj.)
<i>Friday</i>	(yoom) ljum9a
<i>fried</i>	ma'li ma'liyye ma'liyyiin
<i>friend</i>	ṣaahib ('a)ṣhaab
<i>from</i>	min
<i>front of, in</i>	'uddaam
<i>fruit</i>	fawaakih
<i>fy</i>	'ala bi'li
<i>full</i>	malyaan malyaane
	malyaaniin

G

<i>garbage</i>	zbaale
<i>garden</i>	bustaan basatiin
<i>garlic</i>	tuum
<i>general</i>	9aammi 9aammiyye
<i>generous</i>	kariim kariime kurama
<i>German</i>	'almaani 'almaaniyye 'almaan

(Vocab. 2) 357

<i>get up</i>	'aam bi'uum
<i>gift</i>	hadiyye hadaaya
<i>girl</i>	bint (f) banaat
<i>give</i>	'a9ta bya9ti
<i>glass</i>	kaas kaasaat
<i>go</i>	raah biruuḥ
<i>go around</i>	daar biduur
<i>go around, have (someone)</i>	dawwar bidawwir
<i>God</i>	'alla
<i>going</i>	raayih raayha raayhiin
<i>good</i>	kwayyis kwayyse kwayysiin; mniih mniihā mnaah; ṭayyib ṭayybe ṭayybiin
<i>goodness</i>	xeer
<i>good time</i>	bašt
<i>go up</i>	ṭili9 biṭla9
<i>government</i>	ḥukuume ḥukuumaat
<i>graduated, be</i>	txarraj bitxarraj
<i>grain</i>	ḥabbe ḥabbaat
<i>grandfather</i>	jidd jduud; siid syaad
<i>grandmother</i>	sitt sitaat
<i>grapes</i>	9inab
<i>grateful</i>	mamnuun mamnuune
	mamnuuniin
<i>gratitude</i>	mamnuuniyye

<i>grave</i>	'abir 'buur
<i>gray</i>	ramaadi ramaadiyye
	ramaadiyyiin
<i>green</i>	'axḍar xadra xuḍur
<i>greet</i>	sallam bisallim
<i>ground</i>	'ard (f) 'araaḍi
<i>guest</i>	ḡeef ḡyuuf

H

<i>hair</i>	ša9ir
<i>half</i>	nuṣṣ nṣaaṣ
<i>ham</i>	jamboon
<i>hand</i>	'iid 'ayaadi
<i>handkerchief</i>	maḥrame maḥaarim
<i>hang up</i>	9alla' bi9alli'
<i>happy</i>	sa9iid sa9iide su9ada
<i>happy, be</i>	nbaṣaṭ binbṣiṭ
<i>harbor</i>	miina (m) mawaani
<i>hat</i>	burneeṭa baraniiṭ
<i>he</i>	huwwe
<i>head</i>	raas ruus

<i>head (chief)</i>	ra'iis ru'asa(a')
<i>head man (village)</i>	muxtaar maxatiir
<i>health</i>	ṣihḥa
<i>healthy</i>	ṣihḥi ṣihḥiyye
<i>hear</i>	simi9 bisma9
<i>heard</i>	masmuu9 masmuu9a masmuu9iin
<i>hearing, having heard</i>	saami9 saam9a saam9iin
<i>heat</i>	šoob
<i>heavy</i>	t'iil t'iile t'aal
<i>hello</i>	marḥaba ; haloo (on telephone)
<i>help</i>	saa9ad bisaa9id
<i>helped, be</i>	tsaa9ad bitsaa9ad
<i>helping</i>	msaa9ade msaa9adaat
<i>here</i>	hoon
<i>here is, here are</i>	hayy
<i>high</i>	9aali 9aalye 9aalyiin
<i>higher, highest</i>	'a9la 9ulya
<i>hill</i>	tall tlaal
<i>hold</i>	misik bimsik
<i>homeland</i>	waṭan 'awṭaan
<i>honor</i>	šarraf bišarrif ; šaraf
<i>honored, be</i>	tšarraf bitšarraf
<i>hope</i>	t'ammal bit'ammal ; 'amal 'aamaal

360 (Vocab. 2)

<i>hors d'œuvres (with drinks)</i>	maaza
<i>hospital</i>	mustašfa (m) mustašfayaat
<i>hotel</i>	'uteel 'uteelaat
<i>hour</i>	saa9a saa9aat
<i>house</i>	beel byuut
<i>house</i>	sakkan bisakkin
<i>how</i>	kiif
<i>how many</i>	kam
<i>how much</i>	'addees
<i>hundred</i>	miyye
<i>hurried</i>	musta9jal musta9jale musta9jaliin
<i>hurry</i>	sta9jal bista9jil
<i>hurry, in a</i>	mista9jil musta9ijle mista9ijliin
<i>husband</i>	zooj zwaaj ; jooz jwaaz

I

<i>I</i>	'ana
<i>ice</i>	talj
<i>ice cream</i>	buuza

(Vocab 2) 361

<i>idea</i>	fikra fikar
<i>identity card</i>	hawiiye hawiyyaat
<i>if</i>	'iza
<i>if (contrary to fact)</i>	law
<i>if only</i>	yaareet
<i>important</i>	muhimm muhimme muhimmiin
<i>more important, most important</i>	'ahamm
<i>improving</i>	taḥsiin
<i>in</i>	fii
<i>inconvenience</i>	'iz9aaj 'iz9aajaat
<i>increase</i>	zaad biziid; zyaade zyaadaat
<i>independence</i>	'istiqlaal
<i>independent, be</i>	staqall bistqill
<i>industrial</i>	şinaa9i şinaa9iyye
<i>industry</i>	şinaa9a şinaa9aat
<i>inexpensive</i>	rxiiş rxiişa rxaaş
<i>influenza</i>	'influwenza
<i>inform</i>	xabbar bixabbir
<i>information</i>	ma9luumaat (pl)
<i>informed, keep (someone)</i>	ṭamman biṭammin
<i>injustice</i>	zulum
<i>ink</i>	ḥibir
<i>in order to</i>	(la)ḥatta
<i>insist</i>	'aşarr bişirr
<i>instructions</i>	ta9liimaat (pl)

362 (Vocab. 2)

<i>intelligence</i>	zaka (m)
<i>intention</i>	ḡaaye ḡaayaat
<i>interest</i>	maşlaḥa maşaaliḥ
<i>internal</i>	daaxli daaxliyye daaxliyyiin
<i>introduce</i>	9arraf bi9arraf
<i>introduced, be</i>	t9arraf bit9arraf
<i>invite</i>	9azam bi9zim
<i>Iraq</i>	l9iraaq
<i>Iraqi</i>	9iraaqi 9iraaqiyye 9iraaqiyyiin
<i>iron</i>	kawa bikwi; ḥadiid
<i>ironed</i>	makwi makwiyye makwiyyiin
<i>ironing</i>	kawi
<i>irrigation</i>	rayy
<i>Italian</i>	tilyaani tilyaaniyye tilyaan
<i>Italy</i>	'iiṭaalya

J

<i>jacket</i>	jakeet jake(e)taat
<i>January</i>	kaanuun (t)taani
<i>Jerusalem</i>	l'uds (f)

Vocab. 2) 363

<i>job</i>	waziife wazaanyif
<i>joke</i>	nukle nukat
<i>Jordan</i>	l'urdun
<i>Jordanian</i>	'urduni 'urduniyye
	urduniyyiin or 'urduniyye
<i>journalism</i>	şaḥaafe
<i>journalist</i>	şuḥuṣi şuḥuṣiyyiin
<i>journalistic</i>	şaḥaafi şaḥaafiyye
<i>journey</i>	riḥle riḥlaat
<i>judge</i>	'aaḍi 'uḍa or 'uḍaa
	or quḍaat
<i>juice</i>	9aşıir
<i>July</i>	tammuuz
<i>June</i>	ḥzeeraan

K

<i>keep</i>	ḥafaz biḥfaz ;
	xalla bixalli
<i>keeper</i>	ḥaafiz ḥaafza ḥaafziin
<i>key</i>	muftaah mafatiiḥ
<i>kind</i>	jins jnaas
<i>kind enough, be</i>	tfaḍḍal bitfaḍḍal

364 (Vocab. 2)

<i>kindness</i>	faḍil 'afḍaal ; luṭuf
	'alṭaaf
<i>kitchen</i>	maṭbax maṭaabix
<i>knife</i>	sikkiin sakakiin
<i>know</i>	9irif bi9raf
<i>knowing</i>	ma9rife
<i>knowledge</i>	9ilim 9uluum
<i>Koran, The</i>	lqur'aan

L

<i>lamb</i>	xaruuf xirfaan
<i>lamb (meat)</i>	laḥim xaruuf
<i>land</i>	'arḍ (f) 'araaḍi
<i>language</i>	luḡa luḡaat
<i>late</i>	mit'axxir mit'axxre
	mit'axxriin
<i>late, be-</i>	t'axxar bit'axxar
<i>later on</i>	ba9deen
<i>laugh</i>	ḍiḥik biḍḥak
<i>laundry</i>	ḡasiil
<i>law</i>	ḥuquuq ; muḥaamaah (f) ;
	qaanuun qawaaniin

(Vocab.) 365

<i>law (Islamic)</i>	šarii9a
<i>lawyer</i>	muħaami muħaamiin
<i>lead</i>	wadda biwaddi
<i>learn</i>	t9allam bi9allam
<i>learnèd man</i>	9aalim 9ulama
<i>leave</i>	tarak bitrik or butruk
<i>leave (permission)</i>	'izin 'zuune or 'uzunaat
<i>leaves</i>	wara'
<i>Lebanese</i>	lubnaani lubnaaniyye
	lubnaaniyyiin
<i>Lebanon</i>	lubnaan
<i>left (side)</i>	šmaal
<i>lemons</i>	leemuun ħaamiḍ
<i>length</i>	tuul
<i>letter</i>	maktuub makatiib
<i>lettuce</i>	xass
<i>liar</i>	kazzaab kazzaabiin
<i>library</i>	maktabe maktabaat
<i>life</i>	ħayaah (f); 9umur 'a9maar
<i>light</i>	nuur 'anwaar
<i>light (weight)</i>	xafiif xafiife xfaaf
<i>lighten</i>	xaffaf bixaffif
<i>lighter, (cigarette)</i>	'addaaha 'addaahaat
<i>lighter, lightest</i>	'axaff
<i>lightness</i>	xiffe

<i>like (similar)</i>	mitil
<i>like</i>	ħabb biħibb
<i>liked, be</i>	nħabb binħabb
<i>line</i>	šaṭir 'aṣtur or ṣtuur ; xaṭṭ xtuut
	kittaani
<i>linen</i>	'adab 'aadaab
<i>literature</i>	šwayy (f)
<i>little bit, a</i>	kibde
<i>liver</i>	qird quruḍ
<i>loan</i>	maħalli maħalliyye
<i>local</i>	maħalliyyiin
	štaa' bištaa'
<i>long for</i>	mištaa' mištaa'a
<i>longing</i>	mištaa'iin
	šaaf bišuuf ; ṭall
<i>look</i>	biṭull
	tfarraj bitfarraj
<i>look around</i>	šaayif šaayfe
<i>looking</i>	šaayfiin
	tfarraj bitfarraj
<i>look over</i>	xsaara xasaa'ir
<i>loss</i>	naṣiib
<i>lot</i>	ħabb biħibb ; ħubb
<i>love</i>	

<i>loved</i>	maḥbuub maḥbuube
<i>loved one</i>	maḥbuubiin
<i>lowering</i>	ḥabiib ḥabaayib
<i>luck</i>	taxfiḍ
	ḥazz ḥzuuz

M

<i>maestro</i>	'ustaaz 'asaatze
<i>magazine</i>	majalle majallaat
<i>magnificent</i>	9aẓiim 9aẓiime 9aẓimiin
<i>maid</i>	ṣaan9a ṣaan9aat;
	xaadme xaadmaat
<i>mail</i>	bariid
<i>maintain</i>	ḥaafaz biḥaafiz
<i>make</i>	9imil bi9mal
<i>man</i>	rijaal rjaal
<i>manager</i>	mudiir mudara(a')
<i>major</i>	'akbar kubra
<i>map</i>	xaarṭa (or xariiṭa)
	xarṣayit
<i>March</i>	'aaḍaar
<i>market</i>	suu' (f) swaa'

<i>married</i>	mijjawwiz mijjawwze
	mijjawwziin
<i>married, be</i>	djawwaz bidjawwaz
<i>mason</i>	banna (m) bannayiin
<i>master</i>	siid syaad
<i>matches (box)</i>	kibriite kibriitaat
<i>matter</i>	'amir 'umuur
<i>May</i>	'ayyaar
<i>mayor</i>	ra'iis baladiyye
<i>meal (evening)</i>	9aša (m)
<i>meal (midday)</i>	ḡada (m)
<i>measure</i>	'aas bi'iis
<i>measurement</i>	'yaas 'yaasaat
<i>meat</i>	laḥim ; laḥme
<i>medicine</i>	dawa (m) 'adwiye ; ṭibb
<i>meet</i>	'aabal bi'aabil ; jtama9
	bijtmī9 ; laa'a bilaa'i
<i>meeting</i>	'ijtima9 'ijtima9aat
<i>meet together</i>	tlaa'a bitlaa'a
<i>member</i>	9uḍu 'a9ḍaa'
<i>memorial</i>	tizkaar tizkaaraat
<i>mention</i>	zakar buzkur
<i>menu</i>	liista liistaat
<i>merchant</i>	taajir tujjaar
<i>message</i>	xabar 'axbaar

<i>meter</i>	mitir mtaar
<i>middle</i>	'awşat wuşta ; nuşş nşaaş
<i>Middle East, the</i>	şşarq l'awşat
<i>military</i>	9askari 9askariyye 9askariyyiin
<i>milk</i>	ħaliib
<i>million</i>	malyoon malayiin
<i>minister (of state)</i>	waziir wuzara
<i>ministry</i>	wazaara wazaaraat
<i>minor</i>	şuġra (f)
<i>mint</i>	na9na9
<i>minus</i>	'illa
<i>minute</i>	d'ii'a da'aayi'
<i>mister</i>	sayyid
<i>mixed</i>	maxluuť maxluuťa maxluuťiin
<i>modification</i>	ta9diil ta9diilaat
<i>Monday</i>	(yoom) tlineen
<i>money</i>	maşuuri
<i>monk</i>	raahib ruhbaan
<i>month</i>	şahir 'aşhur
<i>monument</i>	tizkaar tizkaaraat
<i>more, most</i>	'aktar
<i>morning</i>	şabaah

<i>morning (adj.)</i>	şabaahı şabaahıyye
<i>morning, the</i>	şşubuh
<i>Moslem</i>	mislim misılme misılmiin
<i>mosque</i>	jaami9 jawaami9
<i>most</i>	'aktar
<i>mother</i>	'imm (f) 'immayaat
<i>mother</i>	waalde waaldaat
<i>move</i>	hazz bihizz
<i>movement</i>	ħarake ħarakaat
<i>movie</i>	sinama sinamaat
<i>moving</i>	hazz
<i>much</i>	ktiir ktiire ktaar
<i>mulberries</i>	tuut
<i>municipal</i>	baladi baladiyye
<i>municipality</i>	baladiyye baladiyyaat
<i>museum</i>	mathaf mataahif
<i>music</i>	muusiiqa
<i>music (adj.)</i>	muusiiqi muusiiqiyye

N

<i>name</i>	'isim 'asmaa'
<i>napkin</i>	fuuta fuwat
<i>nation</i>	dawle duwal
<i>national</i>	watani wataniyye
<i>nationality</i>	jinsiyye jinsiyyaat
<i>naval</i>	bahri bahriyye
	bahriyyiin
<i>near</i>	'adna ; 'ariib
	'ariibe 'raab
<i>Near East, the</i>	şşarq l'adna
<i>nearer, nearest</i>	'a'rab
<i>necessary</i>	qaruuri qaruuriyye
	qaruuriyyiin ; laazim laazme
	laazmiin
<i>necessary, be</i>	lizim bilzam
<i>necessity</i>	qaruura qaruuraat
<i>necktie</i>	gravaat (f) gravattaat
<i>need</i>	htaaj bihtaaj
<i>needle</i>	'ibre 'ubar

<i>neighbor</i>	jaar jiiraan
<i>new</i>	jdiid jdiide jdaad
<i>newer, newest</i>	'ajadd
<i>news</i>	'anbaa' (pl) 'axbaar (pl)
<i>news (adj.)</i>	'ixbaari 'ixbaariyye
	'ixbaariyyiin
<i>newspaper</i>	jariide jaraayid ;
	şahiife şuhuf
<i>New Year's</i>	9iid raas ssane
<i>next to</i>	jamb ; janb
<i>nice</i>	hilu hilwe hilwiin
<i>nice, consider</i>	stahla bistaqli
<i>nicer, nicest</i>	'ahla
<i>night</i>	leele layaali
<i>nighttime</i>	leel
<i>nine</i>	tis9a
<i>nineteen</i>	tisi9 ta9ş
<i>ninety</i>	tis9iin
<i>ninth</i>	taasi9 taas9a
<i>no</i>	la' ; laa
<i>noon</i>	quhur
<i>not</i>	laa ; maa ; miş
<i>notebook</i>	daftar dafaatir
<i>November</i>	tişriin (t) taani
<i>now</i>	halla
<i>number</i>	numra numar ; 9adad
	'a9daad

O

<i>observation</i>	muṣaahade muṣaahadaat
<i>object</i>	ḡaaye ḡaayaat
<i>October</i>	tiṣriin (l)'awwal
<i>office</i>	maktab makaatib
<i>offer</i>	ḡaraḡ biḡriḡ
<i>officer</i>	ṣaabiṭ ṣubbaaṭ
<i>official</i>	mwazzaf mwazzafin
<i>official (adj.)</i>	rasmi rasmiyye
	rasmiiyyiin
<i>oil</i>	zeet zyuut
<i>okra</i>	baamye
<i>old</i>	kbiir kbiire kbaar
<i>older, oldest</i>	'akbar kubra
<i>olives</i>	zeetuun
<i>on</i>	ḡala
<i>one</i>	waahad waḡde (f)
<i>onions</i>	baṣal
<i>open</i>	fataḡ biṭtaḡ
<i>open</i>	faatih faatha faathiin

<i>opened</i>	maftuuh maftuuha
	maftuuhiiin
<i>opened, be</i>	nfataḡ binftih
<i>operation</i>	ḡamaliyye ḡamaliyyaat
<i>opinion</i>	ra'i 'aaraa'
<i>opportunity</i>	furṣa furas
<i>oppose</i>	ḡaaraḡ biḡaariḡ
<i>or</i>	'aw ; willa
<i>oranges</i>	burd'aan
<i>orchard</i>	karm kruum
<i>order</i>	'amar bu'mur
<i>ordinary</i>	ḡaadi ḡaadiyye
	ḡaadiyyiin
<i>organizing</i>	tanziim
<i>other than</i>	ḡeer
<i>out of order</i>	xarbaan xarbaane
	xarbaaniin
<i>outside</i>	barra
<i>overcome</i>	ḡalab biḡlib
<i>overflow</i>	faaḡ bifiḡ
<i>overthrow</i>	xalaḡ bixlaḡ
<i>overwhelm</i>	ḡamar buḡmur
<i>owner</i>	ṣaahib ('a)ṣhaab
<i>or</i>	ṭoor

P

<i>pack</i>	ḍabb biḍubb
<i>packed</i>	maḍbuub maḍbuube
	maḍbuubiin
<i>pain</i>	waja9 wja9
<i>palace</i>	'aṣir 'ṣuur
<i>papa</i>	baaba (m)
<i>paper</i>	wara'
<i>pardon</i>	9afu
<i>parliament</i>	barlamaan barlamaanaat
<i>parliamentary</i>	niyaabi niyaabiyye
	niyaabiyyiin
<i>parsley</i>	ba'duunis
<i>part</i>	qisim 'aṣsaam
<i>party</i>	ḥafle ḥaflaat
<i>pass</i>	mara' bumru'
<i>pass by</i>	faat bifuut
<i>past</i>	maadi maadye
<i>peace</i>	salaam
<i>peaches</i>	durraa'

<i>pears</i>	njaas
<i>peas</i>	bazeella
<i>peasant</i>	fallaah fallaaḥiin
<i>pen, pencil</i>	'alam 'laam
<i>people</i>	naas ; ṣa9b
<i>pepper</i>	filfil
<i>permission</i>	'izin 'zuune or 'uzunaat
<i>permit</i>	samaḥ bismaḥ
<i>person</i>	ṣaxṣ 'aṣxaas
<i>personal</i>	ṣaxṣi ṣaxṣiyye
<i>personality</i>	ṣaxṣiyye ṣaxṣiyyaat
<i>personally</i>	ṣaxṣiyyan
<i>phantom</i>	ṣabah 'aṣbaah
<i>philosophy</i>	falsafe falsafaat
<i>piastre</i>	'irṣ 'ruuṣ
<i>piece</i>	ṣa'fe ṣu'af
<i>pig</i>	xanziir xanaziir
<i>pill</i>	ḥabbe ḥbuub
<i>pin</i>	dabbuus dababiis
<i>place</i>	maḥall maḥallaat ;
	makaan 'amkine
<i>placed</i>	maḥtuut maḥtuuta
	maḥtuutiin
<i>plain</i>	saada (invariable adj.)
<i>plan</i>	xittā xitaṭ

<i>plant</i>	ma9mal ma9aamil
<i>plate</i>	şahin şhuun
<i>pleasant</i>	laṭiif laṭiife laṭiifiin or luṭafa
<i>please</i>	'a9jab bi9jib
<i>pleasure</i>	suruur
<i>pluck</i>	nataf bintif
<i>plums</i>	xuux
<i>pocket</i>	jeeb jyaab
<i>point out</i>	'aššar bi'aššir
<i>polish</i>	lamma9 bilammi9
<i>political</i>	siyaasi siyaasiyye
<i>political science</i>	9ulum siyaasiyye
<i>politics</i>	siyaase
<i>poor (without money)</i>	fa'iir fa'iire fu'ara
<i>poor (unfortunate)</i>	maskiin maskiine masakiir
<i>pork</i>	laḥim xanziir
<i>port</i>	miina (m) mawaani
<i>position</i>	waṣiife waṣaayif
<i>possible</i>	mumkin
<i>possible, be</i>	'amkan bimkin
<i>post office</i>	booşla booşlaa
<i>potatoes</i>	baṭaa'a
<i>pound (currency)</i>	liira liiraat
<i>pour</i>	şabb bşubb

<i>practical</i>	9amali 9amaliyye
<i>prefer</i>	9amaliyyiin
<i>prepare</i>	faqqal bifaddil
<i>prepared</i>	ḥaqqar biḥaqqar
	mḥaqqar mḥaqqara
	mḥaqqariin
<i>present</i>	ḥaaddir ḥaadra ḥaaddiin ; mawjuud mawjuude mawjuudiin
<i>present</i>	'addam bi'addim
<i>presented</i>	m'addam m'addame m'addamiin
<i>presser</i>	kawwa (m) kawwayiin
<i>pressing</i>	kawi
<i>price</i>	ḥa"; si9ir 'as9aar
<i>printed, be</i>	nṭaba9 binṭbi9
<i>private</i>	xuşuuşi
<i>problem</i>	mas'ale masaa'il
<i>proclaim</i>	'a9lan bi9lin
<i>products</i>	mantuujaat (pl)
<i>professional man</i>	'ustaaz 'asaatze
<i>program</i>	barnaamij baraamij ; minhaaj manaabij
<i>project</i>	maşruu9 maşaarii9
<i>promise</i>	wa9ad byuu9id
<i>promote</i>	ra"a bira"i

<i>promoted, be</i>	tra"ā bitra"ā
<i>prompt</i>	musta9jal musta9jale
	musta9jaliin
<i>proof</i>	burhaan barahiin
<i>propose</i>	qtarah biqtrih
<i>prosperous</i>	mwaffa' mwaffa'a
	mwaffa'iin
<i>prove</i>	barhan bibarhin
<i>province</i>	wilaaye wilaayaat
<i>psychology</i>	9ilm nnafs
<i>pulling</i>	saahib saahbe saahbiin
<i>punish</i>	'aasaş bi'aasiş
<i>punished, be</i>	t'aasaş bit'aasaş
<i>punishment</i>	'aasaş 'aasaşaat
<i>pure</i>	fusha (f)
<i>purpose</i>	ğarađ 'ağraađ
<i>put</i>	haţţ bihuţţ
<i>put in order</i>	rattab birattib
<i>put on (clothing)</i>	libis bilbas
<i>putting</i>	haaţit haaţta haaţtiin

	Q
<i>quarter</i>	rubu9 rbaa9
<i>question</i>	su'aal- su'aalaat or
	'as'ile

	R
<i>radio station</i>	'izaa9a 'izaa9aat
<i>radishes</i>	fijil
<i>rail</i>	sikke sikak
<i>railway</i>	sikkit hađiid
<i>read</i>	'iri bi'ra
<i>reading</i>	'raay(e)
<i>ready</i>	mist9idd mist9idde
	mist9iddiin ; haadır haadra
	haadriin
<i>ready, get</i>	sfa9add bist9idd

<i>reasonable</i>	ma9'uul ma9'uule	<i>repairing</i>	tasliih
	ma9'uuliin	<i>repent</i>	taab bituub
<i>reckon</i>	haasab bihaasib	<i>reply</i>	jawaab jawa(a)baat or 'ajwibe
<i>recording</i>	tasjiil		
<i>recover</i>	taab biitiib	<i>request</i>	talab buqlub ; talab
<i>red</i>	'ahmar hamra humur		talabaat
<i>red, become</i>	hmarr bihmarr	<i>resemblance</i>	shabah
<i>redness</i>	'ihmiraar	<i>responsible</i>	mas'uul mas'uule
<i>reference</i>	marja9 maraaji9		mas'uuliin
<i>registered</i>	msajjal msajjale msajjaliin ; msoogar msoogara msoogariin	<i>rest</i>	staraah bistriih ; raaha
		<i>restaurant</i>	ma9am ma9aa9im
<i>rejected</i>	marduud marduude marduudiin	<i>return</i>	radd birudd ; riji9 birja9
<i>relation</i>	9alaa'a 9alaa'aat	<i>returning</i>	raaji9 raaj9a raaj9iin
<i>relative</i>	'ariib 'araayib ; nasiib nasaayib	<i>revive</i>	'an9as bin9is
		<i>reviving</i>	'in9aas
<i>religion</i>	9ulum diiniyye	<i>rice</i>	ruzz
<i>religious</i>	diini diiniyye diiniyyiin	<i>rich</i>	gani ganiyye 'agniya
		<i>ride</i>	rikib birkab
<i>remain</i>	bi'i bib'a ; tamm bitamm	<i>riding</i>	raakib raakbe raakbiin
<i>remaining</i>	baa'i baa'ye baa'yiin	<i>right</i>	ha" h'uu'
<i>remove</i>	'aam bi'iim	<i>right (side)</i>	yamiin
<i>renew</i>	jaddad bijaddid	<i>road</i>	tarii' turu'
<i>repair</i>	shallah bi9allih	<i>roasted</i>	mhammar mhammara mhammariin

<i>roof</i>	şaṭih ştuuh
<i>room</i>	'uuḍa 'uwaḍ ;
	ḡurfe ḡuraf
<i>rooster</i>	diik dyuuk
<i>Russian</i>	ruusi ruusiyye ruus

S

<i>sacrifice</i>	'adḥa (m)
<i>safe, be</i>	silim bislam
<i>safe, keep</i>	sallam bisallim
<i>safety</i>	salaame
<i>said, be</i>	n'aal bin'aal ;
	nḥaka binḥaka
<i>sake of, for the</i>	min šaan
<i>salad</i>	šalaṭa šalaṭaat
<i>salary</i>	maḡaaš maḡaašaāt
<i>salt</i>	miliḥ
<i>same</i>	nafs ; zaat
<i>sanctuary</i>	ḥaram
<i>Saturday</i>	(yoom) ssabt
<i>Saudi Arabia</i>	ssuḡuudiyye
<i>savior</i>	faadi

<i>say</i>	'aal bi'uul
<i>scale</i>	miizaan mayaziin
<i>school</i>	madrase madaaris
<i>science</i>	ḡilim ḡuluum
<i>scissors</i>	m'aşş m'aşšaāt
<i>season</i>	mawsim mawaasin
<i>second</i>	taani taanye
<i>secretarial</i>	kitaabi kitaabiyye
<i>section</i>	qisim 'aqsaam
<i>see</i>	šaaf bišuuf
<i>seed</i>	ḥabbe ḥabbaat
<i>seeing</i>	šaayif šaayfe šaayfiin
<i>seem</i>	zahar bižhar
<i>see (someone) off</i>	waddaḡ biwaddiḡ
<i>seize</i>	misik bimsik
<i>self</i>	nafs ; zaat
<i>sell</i>	baaḡ bibiiḡ
<i>selling</i>	baayiḡ baayḡa baayḡiin
<i>send</i>	baḡat bibḡat
<i>send back</i>	radd birudd
<i>September</i>	'ayluul
<i>service</i>	xidme
<i>seven</i>	sabḡa
<i>seventeen</i>	sabaḡ ṭaḡš
<i>seventh</i>	saabiḡ saabḡa

<i>seventy</i>	sab9iin
<i>sever</i>	hazz bihizz
<i>shake</i>	hazz bihizz ; xadq bixuqq
<i>shaking, a</i>	hazz
<i>shame, put to</i>	xajjal bixajjal
<i>shave</i>	hala' bihli'
<i>she</i>	hiyye
<i>sheet</i>	šaršaf šaraašif
<i>sheet (of paper)</i>	war'a war'aat or wraa'
<i>sheikh</i>	šeex šyuux
<i>shoes (pair)</i>	kundara kanaadir
<i>shortly</i>	9an 'ariib
<i>show</i>	farja bifarji
<i>shining</i>	zaahir zaahre
<i>shirt</i>	'amiiš 'umšaan
<i>shrimp</i>	'reedis
<i>shrine</i>	mazaar mazaaraat
<i>sick</i>	mariiq mariiqa marqa
<i>side</i>	janb jawaanib
<i>side (aspect)</i>	naahye nawaahi
<i>silk</i>	hariir
<i>simple</i>	bašiiṭ bašiṭa bašiṭiin
<i>sincere</i>	muxliš muxlša muxlšiin
<i>singing</i>	gina (m)
<i>sister</i>	'uxt (f) xawaat

<i>sit</i>	'a9ad bu'9ud
<i>situation</i>	haale haalaat
<i>six</i>	sitte
<i>sixteen</i>	sitt ta9š
<i>sixth</i>	saadis saadse
<i>sixty</i>	sittiin
<i>skirt</i>	tannuura tananiir
<i>sky</i>	sama
<i>sleep</i>	naam binaam
<i>slight</i>	'aliil 'aliile 'aliiliin
<i>slowness</i>	mahil
<i>small</i>	zgiir zgiire zgaar
<i>smaller,smallest</i>	'azgar
<i>snore</i>	šaxar bušxur
<i>so</i>	heek
<i>soap</i>	šaabuun
<i>sociology</i>	9ilm lijtimaat
<i>socks</i>	kalsaat (pl)
<i>sold</i>	mabyuu9 mabyuu9a
	mabyuu9iin
<i>soldier</i>	9askari 9asaakir
<i>some</i>	kam
<i>something</i>	šii 'ašya(a')
<i>son</i>	'ibin wlaad ; šabi šubyaan
<i>soon</i>	9an 'ariib

<i>sorry</i>	mit'assif mit'assfe
	mit'assfiin
<i>sorry, be</i>	t'assaf bit'assaf
<i>sort</i>	jins jnaas ; noo9 'anwaa9
<i>so that</i>	(la)hatta
<i>soul</i>	nafs
<i>soup</i>	šooraba
<i>sour</i>	haamid haamda haamdiin
<i>source (of income)</i>	daxil
<i>Spanish</i>	sbanyooli sbanyooliyye
	sbanyool
<i>speak</i>	haka bihki
<i>specialize</i>	txaşaş bitxaşaş
<i>specialty</i>	taxaşşuş
<i>speech, give a</i>	xatāb buxtūb
<i>spend (time)</i>	'aḍa bi'di
<i>spin</i>	ğazal biğzil
<i>spinach</i>	sabaanix
<i>spirit</i>	ruuḥ 'arwaah
<i>spoon</i>	ma9la'a ma9aali'
<i>spring (season)</i>	rabii9
<i>squash</i>	kuusa (m)
<i>stamp</i>	taabi9 tawaabi9
<i>standing</i>	waa'if waa'fe
	waa'fiin
<i>star</i>	najme njuum

388 (Vocab. 2)

<i>state</i>	dawle duwal ;
	wilaaye wilaayaat
<i>station</i>	mhaṭṭa mhaṭṭaat
<i>stay</i>	bi'i bib'a ; dall biḍall
<i>staying</i>	naazil naazle naazliin
<i>steamship</i>	baaxira bawaaaxir
<i>stepfather</i>	jooz 'imm
<i>stepmother</i>	mart 'ab
<i>stick</i>	9aşa 9uşi
<i>stimulus</i>	haafiz hawaafiz
<i>stomach</i>	mi9de mi9daat or mi9ad
<i>stomach ache</i>	waja9 baṭin ; waja9
	mi9de
<i>stop</i>	wa"af biwa"if
<i>stopped</i>	waa'if waa'fe
	waa'fiin
<i>stopping place</i>	maw'if mawaa'if
<i>story (floor)</i>	taabi' tawaabi'
<i>straight ahead</i>	duğri
<i>strawberries</i>	freez
<i>street</i>	šaari9 sawaari9
<i>strike</i>	qarab buḍrab
<i>studio</i>	stuudyo stuudyowaat
<i>study</i>	daras budrus
<i>stuff</i>	haşa biḥşi

(Vocab.) 389

<i>stuffed</i>	maḥṣi maḥṣiyye
	maḥṣiyyiin
<i>stuffed vegetable</i>	maḥṣi maḥaasi
<i>succeed</i>	najaḥ binjah
<i>succeed, make</i>	najjah binajjih
<i>successful</i>	mwaffa' mwaffa'a
	mwaffa'iin
<i>suffer</i>	t9azzab bit9azzab
<i>sugar</i>	sukkar
<i>suit</i>	badle badlaat
<i>suit case</i>	ṣanta ṣantaat
<i>sultan</i>	ṣulṭaan ṣalaṭiin
<i>summer</i>	ṣeef
<i>summer (adj)</i>	ṣeefi ṣeefiyye
<i>summertime</i>	ṣeefiyye ṣeefiyyaat
<i>Sunday</i>	(yoom) l'aḥad
<i>supply</i>	zawwad bizawwid
<i>supplying</i>	tazwiid
<i>support</i>	'ayyad bi'ayyid
<i>suppose</i>	zann biẓunn
<i>supreme</i>	'a9la 9ulya (f)
<i>suspended</i>	manṣuub manṣuube
	manṣuubiin
<i>swallow</i>	bala9 bibla9
<i>sweep</i>	kannas bikannis

390 (Vocab. 2)

<i>sweet</i>	ḥilu ḥilwe ḥilwiin
<i>sword</i>	seef syuuf
<i>Syria</i>	suuriyya

T

<i>table</i>	ṭaawle ṭaawlaat
<i>tail</i>	danab dnaab
<i>tailor</i>	xayyaaṭ xayyaaṭiin
<i>take</i>	'axad ḥyaaxud
<i>take place</i>	ṣaar biṣiir
<i>talk</i>	kalaam
<i>talk to</i>	ḥaaka biḥaaki
<i>tangerine</i>	(yuusif) 'afandi
<i>tastier, tastiest</i>	'atyab
<i>tasty</i>	ṭayyib ṭayybe ṭayybiin
<i>taught, be</i>	t9allam bit9allam
<i>tax</i>	ḍariibe ḍaraa'ib
<i>tea</i>	ṣaay
<i>teach</i>	9allam bi9allim
<i>teacher</i>	'ustaaz 'asaatze ;
	m9allim m9allmiin

(Vocab 2) 391

<i>teaching</i>	ta9liim
<i>telephone</i>	talfan bitalfin
<i>tell</i>	'aal bi'uul
<i>ten</i>	9ašra
<i>tent</i>	xeeme xeemaat <i>or</i> xyaam
<i>tenth</i>	9aašir 9aašre
<i>testimony</i>	šhaade šhaadaat
<i>thank</i>	šakar buškur
<i>thankful</i>	mamnuun mamnuune mamnuuniin
<i>thank you</i>	šukran
<i>then (in that case)</i>	'izan
<i>theology</i>	9ulum diiniyye
<i>there</i>	hunaak
<i>there is, there are</i>	fii
<i>thermometer</i>	miiizaan ħaraara
<i>these</i>	hadoo! (pl)
<i>they</i>	humme
<i>thread</i>	xeet xiiṭaan
<i>three</i>	tlaate
<i>throw down</i>	baṭaḥ bibṭaḥ
<i>throw out</i>	zatt bizitt
<i>thimble</i>	kuštbaan kašaatiin
<i>thing</i>	šii 'ašya(a')

392 (Vocab. 2)

<i>think</i>	ftakar biftkir
<i>thinking</i>	miftkir miftikre miftikriin
<i>third</i>	taalit taalte ; tult tlaat
<i>thirteen</i>	tlat ta9š
<i>thirty</i>	tlaatiin
<i>this</i>	haada (m); haadi (f)
<i>thousand</i>	'alf 'aalaaf
<i>Thursday</i>	(yoom) lxamiis
<i>thus</i>	heek
<i>time</i>	marra marraat ; wa't ; zamaan
<i>tired, become</i>	ti9ib bit9ab
<i>to</i>	9ala
<i>today</i>	lyoom
<i>together</i>	sawa
<i>toilet</i>	beet mayy
<i>tomatoes</i>	bandoora
<i>tomb</i>	'abir 'buur
<i>tomorrow</i>	bukra
<i>tonight</i>	lleele
<i>too</i>	kamaan
<i>tooth</i>	sinn snaan
<i>tooth ache</i>	waja9 snaan

(Vocab. 2) 393

<i>total</i>	majmuu9 majmuu9aat
<i>tourism</i>	siyaaha
<i>tower</i>	burj 'abraaj
<i>town</i>	balad (f) blaad
<i>train</i>	treen treenaat
<i>transfer</i>	hawwal bihawwil
<i>translation</i>	tarjame
<i>translator</i>	mtarjim ntarijmiin
<i>travel</i>	safar
<i>travel</i>	saafar bisaafir
<i>traveling</i>	msaafir msaafre
	msaafriin
<i>treat (medically)</i>	daawa bidaawi
<i>trees</i>	šajar
<i>trip</i>	safra safraat
<i>Tripoli</i>	ṭaraablus (f)
<i>trouble</i>	ḡalabe ḡalabaat
<i>truth</i>	ḥa'ii'a ḥa'aayi'
<i>try</i>	jarrab bijarrib
<i>Tuesday</i>	(yoom) ttalaata
<i>turkey</i>	diik ḥabaš
<i>Turkey</i>	turkiyya
<i>turn</i>	daar bidiir
<i>turn around</i>	daar biduur
<i>turnips</i>	lift

<i>turns, take</i>	ṭnaawab bitnaawab
<i>twelve</i>	ṭna9š
<i>twenty</i>	9išriin
<i>two</i>	tneen tintein (f)
<i>typing</i>	ṭibaa9a

U

<i>uncle (father's brother)</i>	9amm 9maam
<i>uncle (mother's brother)</i>	xaal xwaal
<i>under</i>	taḥt
<i>under (adj.)</i>	taḥṭaani taḥṭaaniyye
<i>undershorts</i>	kalsoon kalsoonaat
<i>understand</i>	fihim bifham
<i>unfortunate</i>	maskiin maskiine
	masakiin
<i>united</i>	muttaḥid muttaḥide
	muttaḥidiin
<i>united, be</i>	ttahad bitthid
<i>United States, The</i>	lwilaayaat lmuttaḥide
<i>university</i>	jaam(i)9a jaam(i)9aat
<i>upset, be</i>	zi9il biz9al

<i>upset being</i>	talabbuk
<i>upset stomach</i>	talabbuk mi9de
<i>up to now</i>	ba9d ; lissa
<i>use</i>	sta9mal bista9mil
<i>useful, be</i>	'afaad bifiid
<i>usually</i>	9aadataa

V

<i>vacant, be</i>	fiḍi biḍa
<i>vacation</i>	furṣa furāṣ
<i>varied</i>	mnawwa9 muawwa9a
	mnawwa9iin
<i>veal</i>	laḥim 9ijil
<i>vegetables</i>	xuḍra
<i>very</i>	jiddan ; ktiir
<i>vice consul</i>	naa'ib 'unṣul ; naayib
	'unṣul
<i>village</i>	'arye qura
<i>vineyard</i>	karm kruum
<i>visit</i>	zaar bizzuur ; z(i)yaara
	z(i)yaaraat

<i>visited, be</i>	nzaar binzaar
<i>visit, have (someone)</i>	zawwar bizawwir
<i>visiting</i>	zaayir zaayre zaayriin
<i>visitor</i>	zaayir zuwwaar
<i>voice</i>	ṣoot ('a)ṣwaat

W

<i>wages</i>	ma9aaṣ ma9aaṣaat
<i>wait</i>	stanna bistanna
<i>wake (someone)</i>	fayya' bifayyi'
<i>wake up</i>	faa' bifii'
<i>walk</i>	maṣa bimṣi
<i>walking</i>	maaṣi maaṣye maaṣyiin
<i>wall</i>	ḥeet ḥiitaa
<i>want</i>	raad biriid
<i>wash</i>	ḡassal biḡassil ; ḡasiil
<i>wash down</i>	ṣaṭaf buṣṭuf
<i>watch</i>	saa9a saa9aat
<i>watchmaker</i>	saa9aati saa9aatiyye
<i>water</i>	mayy (f)
<i>watermelon</i>	baṭṭiix

<i>way</i>	{arii' {uru'	<i>winter</i>	šita
<i>we</i>	niĥna	<i>winter (adj.)</i>	šatawi šatawiyye
<i>weather</i>	ta's		šatawiyyiin
<i>wedding</i>	9urs 'a9raas	<i>winter resort</i>	mašta (m) mašaati
<i>Wednesday</i>	(yoom) l'arba9a	<i>wintertime</i>	šatawiyye šatawiyyaat
<i>week</i>	'usbuu9 'asabii9 ;	<i>wipe off</i>	masaĥ bimsaĥ
	jum9a juma9	<i>wish</i>	keef
<i>what (adj.)</i>	'ayy	<i>with</i>	ma9
<i>what (pron.)</i>	'eeš ; šuu	<i>without</i>	bala
<i>whatever</i>	'add maa (+ verb)	<i>woman</i>	mara niswaan
<i>when</i>	'eemta (n) ; lamma(n)	<i>wool</i>	šuuf
<i>whenever</i>	'eemta maa (+ verb)	<i>word</i>	kilme kilmaat
<i>where</i>	feen ; ween	<i>work</i>	štaġal bištaġil ; 9amal
<i>wherever</i>	feen maa/ween maa (+ verb)		'a9maal
<i>which (adj.)</i>	'ayy	<i>worker</i>	9aamil 9ummaal
<i>white</i>	'abyađ beeđa biid	<i>workshop</i>	mašġal mašaagil
<i>white, become</i>	byađd bibyađd	<i>world</i>	dinya ; 9aalam
<i>who, whom, whose</i>	miin	<i>wrestle</i>	baaṭaĥ bibaaṭiĥ
<i>why</i>	leeš	<i>write</i>	katab buktub
<i>width</i>	9arđ	<i>writer</i>	kaatib kultaab
<i>wife</i>	zooje zoojaat ;	<i>writing</i>	ktaabe
	mara niswaan	<i>writing (adj.)</i>	kaatib kaatbe kaatbiin
<i>window</i>	šubbaak šababiik	<i>wrong</i>	ġalať (invariable adj.) ;
<i>wine</i>	nbiid		maġluuť maġluuṭa
			maġluuṭiin

Y

<i>yard (measure)</i>	yard yardaat
<i>year</i>	sane sniin ; 9aam 'a9waam
<i>yellow</i>	'aşfar şafra şufur
<i>yes</i>	'aywa ; na9am
<i>yesterday</i>	mbaarih
<i>you</i>	inte (m) ; inti (f.) ; 'intu (pl)
<i>young</i>	zğiir zğiire zğaar
<i>younger, youngest</i>	'azğar

Z

<i>zero</i>	sifir şfaar
-------------	-------------